



US008093358B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Blättler et al.(10) **Patent No.:** **US 8,093,358 B2**
(45) **Date of Patent:** **Jan. 10, 2012**(54) **METHODS OF TREATMENT USING ANTI-ERBB ANTIBODY-MAYTANSINOID CONJUGATES**(75) Inventors: **Walter Blättler**, Brookline, MA (US);
Ravi V. J. Chari, Newton, MA (US)(73) Assignee: **Immunogen, Inc.**, Waltham, MA (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 845 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **11/949,351**(22) Filed: **Dec. 3, 2007**(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2008/0226659 A1 Sep. 18, 2008

Related U.S. Application Data

(60) Division of application No. 11/488,545, filed on Jul. 17, 2006, now Pat. No. 7,575,748, which is a continuation of application No. 09/811,123, filed on Mar. 16, 2001, now Pat. No. 7,097,840.

(60) Provisional application No. 60/238,327, filed on Oct. 5, 2000, provisional application No. 60/189,844, filed on Mar. 16, 2000, provisional application No. 60/327,563, filed on Jun. 23, 2000.

(51) **Int. Cl.**
C07K 16/00 (2006.01)(52) **U.S. Cl.** **530/387.1; 424/130.1**(58) **Field of Classification Search** None
See application file for complete search history.(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,896,111 A 7/1975 Kupchan et al. 260/239.3 T
 4,137,230 A 1/1979 Hashimoto et al. 260/239.3 P
 4,151,042 A 4/1979 Higashide et al. 195/96
 4,248,870 A 2/1981 Miyashita et al. 424/248.54
 4,256,746 A 3/1981 Miyashita et al. 424/248.54
 4,260,608 A 4/1981 Miyashita et al. 424/248.54
 4,265,814 A 5/1981 Hashimoto et al. 260/239.3 P
 4,294,757 A 10/1981 Asai 260/239.3 P
 4,307,016 A 12/1981 Asai et al. 260/239.3 P
 4,308,268 A 12/1981 Miyashita et al. 424/248.54
 4,308,269 A 12/1981 Miyashita et al. 424/248.54
 4,309,428 A 1/1982 Miyashita et al. 424/248.54
 4,313,946 A 2/1982 Powell et al. 424/248.54
 4,315,929 A 2/1982 Freedman et al. 424/248.54
 4,317,821 A 3/1982 Miyashita et al. 424/248.54
 4,322,348 A 3/1982 Asai et al. 260/239.3 P
 4,331,598 A 5/1982 Hasegawa et al. 260/239.3 P
 4,361,650 A 11/1982 Asai et al. 435/119
 4,362,663 A 12/1982 Kida et al. 260/239.3 P
 4,364,866 A 12/1982 Asai et al. 260/239.3 P
 4,371,533 A 2/1983 Akimoto et al. 424/248.54
 4,424,219 A 1/1984 Hashimoto et al. 424/248.54
 4,450,254 A 5/1984 Isley et al.
 4,968,603 A 11/1990 Slamon et al. 435/6
 4,981,979 A 1/1991 Sivam
 5,183,884 A 2/1993 Kraus et al. 536/23.5
 5,208,020 A * 5/1993 Chari et al. 424/181.1
 5,217,713 A 6/1993 Iwasa et al.

5,395,924 A 3/1995 Blattler et al.
 5,416,064 A 5/1995 Chari et al. 514/229.5
 5,480,968 A 1/1996 Kraus et al. 530/326
 5,514,554 A 5/1996 Bacus
 5,639,641 A 6/1997 Pedersen et al.
 5,677,171 A 10/1997 Hudziak et al. 435/240.27
 5,679,648 A 10/1997 McCaffrey et al.
 5,705,157 A 1/1998 Greene
 5,725,856 A 3/1998 Hudziak
 5,747,261 A 5/1998 King et al.
 5,772,997 A 6/1998 Hudziak et al. 424/130.1
 5,783,186 A 7/1998 Arakawa et al. 424/143.1
 5,821,337 A 10/1998 Carter et al. 530/387.3
 5,824,311 A 10/1998 Green et al. 424/138.1
 5,837,234 A 11/1998 Gentile et al. 424/93.7
 5,840,525 A 11/1998 Vandlen et al. 435/69.1
 5,877,305 A 3/1999 Huston et al.
 5,919,815 A 7/1999 Bradley et al.
 5,968,517 A 10/1999 Duncan et al. 424/195.1
 6,022,541 A 2/2000 Senger et al.
 6,054,297 A * 4/2000 Carter et al. 435/69.6
 6,333,410 B1 12/2001 Chari et al.
 6,436,931 B1 8/2002 Chari et al.
 6,441,163 B1 8/2002 Chari et al.
 6,531,131 B1 3/2003 Gu et al.
 6,632,979 B2 10/2003 Erickson et al.
 7,030,231 B1 4/2006 Craik et al.
 7,097,840 B2 8/2006 Erickson et al.
 7,276,497 B2 10/2007 Chari et al.
 7,303,749 B1 12/2007 Chari et al.
 7,375,078 B2 5/2008 Feng
 7,575,748 B1 8/2009 Erickson et al.
 7,754,211 B2 7/2010 Rosenblum et al.
 2002/0001587 A1 1/2002 Erickson et al.
 2004/0235068 A1 11/2004 Levinson
 2004/0241174 A1 12/2004 Amphlett et al.
 2005/0133285 A1 6/2005 Shimizu
 2005/0169933 A1 8/2005 Steeves et al.
 2005/0238650 A1 10/2005 Crowley et al.
 2005/0276812 A1 12/2005 Ebens et al.

(Continued)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

AU 2003/259913 8/2003
(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Erickson H.K. et al., "Antibody-Maytansinoid Conjugates are activated in targeted cancer cells by Lysosomal degradation and Linker-Dependent Intracellular Processing", *Cancer Res.* 66: (8), pp. 4426-4433, (2006).

(Continued)

Primary Examiner — Laura B Goddard*Assistant Examiner* — Meear Natarajan(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm* — Sughrue Mion, PLLC(57) **ABSTRACT**

The application concerns methods of treatment using anti-ErbB receptor antibody-maytansinoid conjugates, and articles of manufacture suitable for use in such methods. In particular, the invention concerns ErbB receptor-directed cancer therapies, using anti-ErbB receptor antibody-maytansinoid conjugates.

8 Claims, 46 Drawing Sheets

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

2007/0092940	A1	4/2007	Eigenbrot et al.
2007/0269446	A1	11/2007	de Sauvage et al.
2008/0085283	A1	4/2008	Levinson
2008/0114153	A1	5/2008	Steeves et al.
2008/0145374	A1	6/2008	Steeves et al.
2008/0166294	A1	7/2008	de Sauvage et al.
2008/0171040	A1	7/2008	Ebens et al.
2008/0171856	A1	7/2008	Steeves et al.
2008/0171865	A1	7/2008	Steeves et al.
2008/0226659	A1	9/2008	Erickson et al.
2009/0041791	A1	2/2009	Feng
2009/0202536	A1	8/2009	Ebens et al.
2010/0136033	A1	6/2010	Erickson et al.

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

AU	2003/247762	1/2004
CR	8207	5/2011
EP	0 425 235 A2	5/1991
EP	0 563 475 A1	10/1993
EP	1 354 896 A1	10/2003
JP	58-167592	10/1983
JP	62-195387	8/1987
JP	3161490 A	7/1991
JP	2001-503760 A	3/2001
JP	2002-541088	12/2002
JP	2002-543093	12/2002
JP	2003-503365	1/2003
JP	2003501487 A	1/2003
WO	89/06692	7/1989
WO	WO 89/06692	7/1989
WO	93/21319	10/1993
WO	WO 93/21319	10/1993
WO	94/00136	1/1994
WO	WO 94/00136	1/1994
WO	94/22478	10/1994
WO	WO 94/22478	10/1994
WO	96/16173	5/1996
WO	WO 96/16173	5/1996
WO	97/00271	1/1997
WO	WO 97/00271	1/1997
WO	97/04801	2/1997
WO	WO 97/04801	2/1997
WO	98/02463	1/1998
WO	WO 97/02463	1/1998
WO	WO 98/08506	3/1998
WO	98/17797	4/1998
WO	WO 98/17797	4/1998
WO	9820020 A2	5/1998
WO	99/31140	6/1999
WO	WO 99/31140	6/1999
WO	00/20579	4/2000
WO	WO 00/20579	4/2000
WO	00/69460	11/2000
WO	WO 00/69460	11/2000
WO	0076554 A1	12/2000
WO	01/00238 A1	1/2001
WO	01/00244 A2	1/2001
WO	WO 01/00238 A1	1/2001
WO	WO 01/00244 A2	1/2001
WO	01/5730 A1	3/2001
WO	WO 01/15730 A1	3/2001
WO	0124673 A2	4/2001
WO	WO 02/16429	2/2002
WO	02057316 A1	7/2002
WO	02098883 A1	12/2002
WO	WO 03/000113	1/2003
WO	WO 03/024392	3/2003
WO	03057163 A2	7/2003
WO	03068956 A1	8/2003
WO	WO 03/070234	8/2003
WO	03074081 A1	9/2003
WO	WO 2004/005470	1/2004
WO	WO 2004/016225	2/2004

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Xu, et al., *Clinical Cancer Research*, Abstract, 3(9): 1629-1634, 1997.

Chari, RVJ "Targeted delivery of chemotherapeutics: tumor-activated prodrug therapy," *Advanced Drug Delivery Reviews* 31:89-104 (1998).

Spector et al., "Study of the Biologic Effects of Lapatinib, a Reversible Inhibitor of ErbB1 and ErbB2 Tyrosine Kinases, on Tumor Growth and Survival Pathways in Patients With Advanced Malignancies," *Jour. of Clin. Onc.* 23(11):2502-2512 (2005).

Aasland et al., "Expression of oncogenes in thyroid tumours: Coexpression of *c-erbB2/neu* and *c-erbB*," *Br. J. Cancer*, vol. 57, pp. 358-363 (1988).

Bacus et al., "Differentiation of Cultured Human Breast Cancer Cells (AU-565 and MCF-7) Associated With Loss of Cell Surface *HER-2/neu* Antigen," *Molecular Carcinogenesis*, vol. 3, pp. 350-362 (1990).

Baselga et al., "Phase II Study of Weekly Intravenous Recombinant Humanized Anti-p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody in Patients With *HER2/neu*-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer," *J. Clin. Oncol.*, vol. 14, pp. 737-744 (1996).

Borst et al., "Oncogene Alterations in Endometrial Carcinoma," *Gynecol Oncol.*, vol. 38, pp. 364-366 (1990).

Carter et al., "Humanization of anti-p185^{HER2} antibody for human cancer therapy" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 89, pp. 4285-4289 (1992).

Chari et al., "Immunoconjugates Containing Novel Maytansinoids: Promising Anticancer Drugs," *Cancer Research*, vol. 52, pp. 127-131 (1992).

Cobleigh et al., "Multinational Study of the Efficacy and Safety of Humanized Anti-HER2 Monoclonal Antibody in Women Who Have *HER2*-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer That Has Progressed After Chemotherapy for Metastatic Disease," *J. Clin. Oncol.*, vol. 17, pp. 2639-2648 (1999).

Cohen et al., "Expression pattern of the *neu* (NGL) gene-encoded growth factor receptor protein (p185^{neu}) in normal and transformed epithelial tissues of the digestive tract," *Oncogene*, vol. 4, pp. 81-88 (1989).

Drebin et al., "Monoclonal antibodies reactive with distinct domains of the *neu* oncogene-encoded p185 molecule exert synergistic anti-tumor effects in vivo," *Oncogene*, vol. 2, pp. 273-277 (1988).

Drebin et al., "Down-Modulation of an Oncogene Protein Product and Reversion of the Transformed Phenotype by Monoclonal Antibodies," *Cell*, vol. 41, pp. 695-706 (1985).

D'Souza et al., "Overexpression of *ERBB2* in human mammary epithelial cells signals inhibition of transcription of the E-cadherin gene," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 91, pp. 7202-7206 (1994).

Guérin et al., "Overexpression of Either *c-myc* or *c-erbB-2/neu* Proto-Oncogenes in Human Breast Carcinomas: Correlation with Poor Prognosis," *Oncogene Research*, vol. 3, pp. 21-31 (1988).

Gu et al., "Overexpression of *her-2/neu* in human prostate cancer and benign hyperplasia," *Cancer Letters*, vol. 99, pp. 185-189 (1996).

Harweth et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies against the Extracellular Domain of the *erbB-2* Receptor Function as Partial Ligand Agonists," *The Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 267, No. 21, pp. 15160-15167 (1992).

Hudziak et al., "p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody Has Antiproliferative Effects In Vitro and Sensitizes Human Breast Tumor Cells to Tumor Necrosis Factor," *Molecular and Cellular Biology*, vol. 9, No. 3, pp. 1165-1172 (1989).

Klapper et al., "A subclass of tumor-inhibitory monoclonal antibodies to *ErbB-2/HER2* blocks crosstalk with growth factor receptors," *Oncogene*, vol. 14, pp. 2099-2109 (1997).

Kraus et al., "Isolation and characterization of *ERBB3*, a third member of the *ERBB* / epidermal growth factor receptor family: Evidence for overexpression in a subset of human mammary tumors," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 86, pp. 9193-9197 (1989).

Kumar et al., "Regulation of Phosphorylation of the *c-erbB-2/HER2* Gene Product by a Monoclonal Antibody and Serum Growth Factor(s) in Human Mammary Carcinoma Cells," *Molecular and Cellular Biology*, vol. 11, no. 2, pp. 979-986 (1991).

Lewis et al., "Differential responses of human tumor cell lines to anti-p185^{HER2} monoclonal antibodies," *Cancer Immunol. Immunother.*, vol. 37, pp. 255-263.

McCann et al., "*c-erbB-2* Oncoprotein Expression in Primary Human Tumors," *Cancer*, vol. 65, pp. 88-92 (1990).

- McKenzie et al., "Generation and characterization of monoclonal antibodies specific for the human *neu* oncogene product, p185" *Oncogene*, vol. 4, pp. 543-548 (1989).
- Myers et al., "Biological Effects of Monoclonal Antireceptor Antibodies Reactive with *neu* Oncogene Product, p185^{neu}," *Methods in enzymology*, vol. 198, pp. 277-290 (1991).
- Pietras et al., "Antibody to HER-2/*neu* receptor blocks DNA repair after cisplatin in human breast and ovarian cancer cells," *Oncogene*, vol. 9, pp. 1829-1838 (1994).
- Plowman et al., "Heregulin induces tyrosine phosphorylation of HER4/P180^{ERBB4}," *Letters to Nature*, vol. 366, pp. 473-475 (1993).
- Plowman et al., "Ligand-specific activation of HER4 /p180^{erbB4}, a fourth member of the epidermal growth factor receptor family," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 90, pp. 1746-1750 (1993).
- Liu et al., "Eradication of large colon tumor xenografts by targeted delivery of maytansinoids" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 93, pp. 8618-8623 (1996).
- Ross et al., "Prognostic Significance of HER-2/*neu* Gene Amplification Status by Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization of Prostate Carcinoma," *Cancer*, vol. 79, pp. 2162-2170 (1997).
- Ross et al., "Her-2/*neu* Gene Amplification Status in Prostate Cancer by Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization," *Human Pathology*, vol. 28, No. 7, pp. 827-833 (1997).
- Sadasivan et al., "Overexpression of HER-2/NEU May be an Indicator of Poor Prognosis in Prostate Cancer," *The Journal of Urology*, vol. 150, pp. 126-131 (1993).
- Schaefer et al., "γ-Heregulin: a novel heregulin isoform that is an autocrine growth factor for the human breast cancer cell line, MDA-MB-175," *Oncogene*, vol. 15, pp. 1385-1394 (1997).
- Scott et al., "p185^{HER2} Signal Transduction in Breast Cancer Cells," *The Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 266, No. 22, pp. 14300-14305 (1991).
- Shepard et al., "Monoclonal Antibody Therapy of Human Cancer: Taking the HER2 Protooncogene to the Clinic," *Journal of clinical Immunology*, vol. 11, No. 3 (1991).
- Slamon et al., "Human Breast Cancer: Correlation of Relapse and Survival with Amplification of the HER-2/*neu* Oncogene," *Science*, vol. 235, pp. 177-182 (1987).
- Slamon et al., "Studies of the HER-2/*neu* Proto-oncogene in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer" *Science*, vol. 244, pp. 707-712 (1989).
- Sliwkowski et al., "Coexpression of *erbB2* and *erbB3* Proteins Reconstitutes a High Affinity Receptor for Heregulin," *The Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 269, No. 20, pp. 14661-14665 (1994).
- Stancovski et al., "Mechanistic aspects of the opposing effects of monoclonal antibodies to the ERBB2 receptor on tumor growth," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 88, pp. 8691-8695 (1991).
- Tagliabue et al., "Selection of Monoclonal Antibodies Which Induce Internalization and Phosphorylation of p185^{HER2} and Growth Inhibition of Cells with HER2/NEU Gene Amplification," *Int. J. Cancer*, vol. 47, pp. 933-937 (1991).
- Williams et al., "Expression of c-erbB-2 in Human Pancreatic Adenocarcinomas," *Pathobiology*, vol. 59, pp. 46-52 (1991).
- Xu et al., "Antibody-Induced Growth Inhibition is Mediated Through Immunohistochemically and Functionally Distinct Epitopes on the Extracellular Domain of the c-erbB-2 (HER-2/*neu*) Gene Product," vol. 53, pp. 401-408 (1993).
- Zhau et al., "Amplification and Expression of the c-erb B-2/*neu* Proto-Oncogene in Human Bladder Cancer," *Molecular Carcinogenesis* vol. 3, pp. 254-257 (1990).
- King et al., "Amplification of a Novel v-erbB-Related Gene in a Human Mammary Carcinoma," *Science*, vol. 229, pp. 974-976 (1985).
- Fukushige et al., "Localization of a Novel v-erbB-Related Gene, c-erbB-2, on Human Chromosome 17 and Its Amplification in a Gastric Cancer Cell Line," *Molecular and Cellular Biology*, vol. 6, No. 3, pp. 955-958 (1986).
- Database Chemabs 'Online!', Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus, Ohio, US; Brechbiel, Martin W. et al: "Synthesis and evaluation of antiproliferative activity of a geldanamycin-herceptin immunconjugate." Retrieved from STN Database accession No. 2000:796068, XP002164006, abstract & ABSTR. PAP—AM. CHEM. SOC. (2000), 220TH, MEDI-071.
- Arteaga, C. L., et al., "p185^{c-erbB-2} Signaling Enhances Cisplatin-Induced Cytotoxicity in Human Breast Carcinoma Cells: Association Between an Oncogenic Receptor Tyrosine Kinase and Drug-Induced DNA Repair" *Cancer Research*, vol. 54, pp. 3758-3765 (1994).
- Bacus, S. S. et al., "Tumor-inhibitory Monoclonals Antibodies to the HER-2/Neu Receptor Induce Differentiation of Human Breast Cancer Cells", *Cancer Research*, vol. 52, pp. 2580-2589 (1992).
- Fendly, B. M. et al., "Characterization of Murine Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive to Either the Human Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor or HER2/*neu* Gene Product", *Cancer Research*, vol. 50, pp. 1550-1558 (1990).
- Hancock, M.C. et al., A Monoclonal Antibody Against the c-erbB-2 Protein Enhances the Cytotoxicity of cis-Diamminedichloroplatinum Against Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cell Lines; vol. 51, pp. 4575-4580 (1991).
- Issell, B. F. et al., "Maytansine", *Cancer Treatment Reviews*, vol. 5, pp. 199-207 (1978).
- Karsprzyk, P. G. et al., "Therapy of an Animal Model of Human Gastric Cancer Using a Combination of Anti-erbB-2 Monoclonals Antibodies", *Cancer Research*, vol. 52, pp. 2771-2776 (1992).
- Kern, J. A. et al., "p185^{neu} Expression in Human Lung Adenocarcinomas Predicts Shortened Survival", *Cancer Research*, vol. 50, pp. 5184-5191 (1990).
- Lewis, G.D. et al., "Growth Regulation of Human Breast and Ovarian Tumor Cells by Heregulin: Evidence for the Requirement of ErbB2 as a Critical Component in Mediating Heregulin Responsiveness" *Cancer Research*, vol. 56, pp. 1457-1465 (1996).
- Maier, L. A. et al., "Requirements for the Internalization of a Murine Monoclonal Antibody Directed Against the Her-2/*neu* Gene Product c-erbB-2" *Cancer Research*, vol. 51, pp. 5361-5369 (1991).
- Park, Joo-Bae et al., "Amplification, Overexpression, and Rearrangement of the erbB-2 Protooncogene in Primary Human Stomach Carcinomas", *Cancer Research*, vol. 49, pp. 6605-6609 (1989).
- Database Chemabs Online! Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus, Ohio, US; Skrepnik, Nebojsa et al., "Effects of anti-erbB-2 (HER-2/*neu*) Recombinant Oncotoxin Ar209 on Human Non-Small Cell Lung Carcinoma Grown Orthotopically in Athymic Nude Mice" retrieved from STN Database Accession No. 126:14452 XP002164007, Abstract & Clin. Cancer Research Res. (1996), 2(11), 1851-1857.
- Sarup, J. C. et al., "Characterization of an Anti-p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody that Stimulates Receptor Function and Inhibits Tumor Cell Growth", *Growth Regulation*, vol. 1, pp. 72-82 (1991).
- Shawver, L. K. et al., "Ligand-like Effects Induced by Anti-c-erbB2 Antibodies Do Not Correlate with and Are Not Required for Growth Inhibition of Human Carcinoma Cells", *Cancer research*, vol. 54, pp. 1367-1373 (1994).
- Skrepnik, N. et al., "Effects of Anti-erbB2 (Her-2/*neu*) Recombinant Oncotoxin AR209 on Human Non-Small Cell Lung Carcinoma Grown Orthotopically in Athymic Nude Mice", *Clinical Cancer Research*, vol. 2, pp. 1851-1857 (1996).
- Vitetta, E. S. et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies as Againsts: An Expanded Role for their Use in Cancer Therapy", *Cancer Research*, vol. 54, pp. 5301-5309 (1994).
- Weiner, D. B. et al., "Expression of the *neu* Gene-encoded Protein (P185^{neu}) in Human Non-Small Cell Carcinomas of the Lung", *Cancer Research*, vol. 50, pp. 421-425 (1990).
- Yokota, J. et al., "Amplification of c-erbB2 Oncogene in Human Adenocarcinomas in Vivo", *The Lancet*, vol. 1, pp. 765-767 (1986).
- Yonemura, Y. et al., "Evaluation of Immunoreactivity for erbB-2 Protein as a Marker of Poor Short Term Prognosis in Gastric Cancer", *Cancer Research*, vol. 51, pp. 1034-1038 (1991).
- Aasland et al., "Expression of Oncogenes in Thyroid Tumours Coexpression of c-erbB2/*neu* and c-erbB", *Br. J. Cancer*, vol. 57, pp. 358-363 (1988).
- Bacus et al., "Differentiation of Cultured Human Breast Cancer Cells (AU-565 and MCF-7) Associated with Loss of Cell Surface HER-2/*neu* Antigen", *Molecular Carcinogenesis*, vol. 3, pp. 350-362 (1990).
- Baselga et al., "Phase II Study of Weekly Intravenous Recombinant Humanized Anti-pi85^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody in Patients with HER2/*neu* Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer", *J. Clin. Oncol.*, vol. 14, pp. 737-744 (1996).

- Borst et al., "Oncogene Alterations in Endometrial Carcinoma", *Gynecol. Oncol.*, vol. 38, pp. 364-366 (1990).
- Carter et al., "Humanization of anti-p185^{HER2} Antibody for Human Cancer Therapy", *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 89, pp. 4285-4289 (1992).
- Chari et al., "Immunoconjugates Containing Novel Maytansinoids: Promising Anticancer Drugs", *Cancer Research*, vol. 52, pp. 127-131 (1992).
- Chari et al., "Targeted Delivery of Chemotherapeutics: Tumor-Activated Prodrug Therapy", *Advanced Drug Delivery Reviews*, vol. 31, pp. 89-104 (1998).
- Cobleigh et al., "Multinational Study of the Efficacy and Safety of Humanized Anti-HER2 Monoclonal Antibody in Women Who Have HER2-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer that has Progressed after Chemotherapy for Metastatic Disease", *J. Clin. Oncol.*, vol. 17, pp. 2639-2648 (1999).
- Cohen et al., "Expression Pattern of the neu (NGL) Gene-Coded Growth Factor Receptor Protein (p185^{neu}) in Normal and Transformed Epithelial Tissues of the Digestive Tract", *Oncogene*, vol. 4, pp. 81-88 (1989).
- Drebin et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Reactive with Distinct Domains of the neu Oncogene-Encoded p185 Molecule Exert Synergistic Anti-tumor Effects in Vivo", *Oncogene*, vol. 2, pp. 273-277 (1988).
- Drebin et al., "Down-Modulation of an Oncogene Protein Product and Reversion of the Transformed Phenotype by Monoclonal Antibodies", *Cell*, vol. 41, pp. 695-706 (1985).
- D'Souza et al., "Overexpression of ERBB2 in Human Mammary Epithelial Cells Signals Inhibition of Transcription of the E-cadherin Gene", *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA*, vol. 91, pp. 7202-7206 (1994).
- Guerin et al., "Overexpression of Either c-myc or c-erbB-2/neu Proto-Oncogenes in Human Breast Carcinomas: Correlation with Poor Prognosis" *Oncogene Research*, vol. 3, pp. 21-31 (1988).
- Gu et al., "Overexpression of her-2/neu in Human Prostate Cancer and Benign Hyperplasia", *Cancer Letters*, vol. 99, pp. 185-189 (1996).
- Harweth et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies Against the Extracellular Domain of the erbB-2 Receptor Function as Partial Ligand Agonists", *The Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 267, No. 21, pp. 15160-15167 (1992).
- Hudziak et al., "p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody has Antiproliferative Effects in Vitro and Sensitizes Human Breast Tumor Cells to Tumor Necrosis Factor", *Molecular and Cellular Biology*, vol. 9, No. 3, pp. 1165-1172 (1989).
- Klapper et al., "A Subclass of Tumor-inhibitory Monoclonal Antibodies to ErbB-2/HER2 Blocks Crosstalk with Growth Receptors", *Oncogene*, vol. 14, pp. 2099-2109 (1997).
- Kraus et al., "Isolation and Characterization of ERBB3, a Third Member of the ERBB/epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Family: Evidence for Overexpression in a Subset of Human Mammary Tumors", *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 86, pp. 9193-9197 (1989).
- Kumar et al., "Regulation of Phosphorylation of the c-erbB-2/HER2 Gene Product by a Monoclonal Antibody and Serum Growth Factor(s) in Human Mammary Carcinoma Cells", *Molecular and Cellular Biology*, vol. 11, No. 2, pp. 979-986 (1991).
- Lewis et al., "Differential Responses of Human Tumor Cell Lines to Anti-p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibodies", *Cancer Immunol. Immunother.*, vol. 37, pp. 255-263 (1993).
- McCann et al., "c-erbB-2 Oncoprotein Expression in Primary Human Tumors", *Cancer*, vol. 65, pp. 89-92 (1990).
- McKenzie et al., "Generation and Characterization of Monoclonal Antibodies Specific for the Human neu Oncogene Product, p185", *Oncogene*, vol. 4, pp. 543-548 (1989).
- Myers et al., "Biological Effects of Monoclonal Antireceptor Antibodies Reactive with neu Oncogene Product, p185^{neu}", *Methods in Enzymology*, vol. 198, pp. 277-290 (1991).
- Pietras et al., "Antibody to HER-2/neu Receptor Blocks DNA Repair after Cisplatin in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer Cells", *Oncogene*, vol. 9, pp. 1829-1838 (1994).
- Plowman et al., "Heregulin Induces Tyrosine Phosphorylation of HER4/P180^{ERBB4}", *Letters to Nature*, vol. 366, pp. 473-475 (1993).
- Plowman et al., "Ligand-specific Activation of HER4/p180^{ERBB4}, a Fourth Member of the Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Family", *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 90, pp. 1746-1750 (1993).
- Liu et al., "Eradication of Large Colon Tumor Xenografts by Targeted Delivery of Maytansinoids", *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 93, pp. 8618-8623 (1996).
- Ross et al., "Prognostic Significance of HER-2/neu Gene Amplification Status by Fluorescence in Situ Hybridization of Prostate Carcinoma", *Cancer*, vol. 79, pp. 2162-2170 (1997).
- Ross et al., "HER-2/neu Gene Amplification Status in Prostate Cancer by Fluorescence in Situ Hybridization", *Human Pathology*, vol. 28, No. 7, pp. 827-833 (1997).
- Sadasivan et al., "Overexpression of HER-2/NEU May be an Indicator of Poor Prognosis in Prostate Cancer", *The Journal of Urology*, vol. 150, pp. 126-131 (1993).
- Schaefer et al., "γ-Heregulin: A Novel Heregulin Isoform that is an Autocrine Growth Factor for the Human Breast Cancer Cell Line, MDA-MB-175", *Oncogene*, vol. 15, pp. 1385-1394 (1997).
- Scott et al., "p185^{HER2} Signal Transduction in Breast Cancer Cells", *The Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 266, No. 22, pp. 14300-14305 (1991).
- Shepard et al., "Monoclonal Antibody Therapy of Human Cancer: Taking the HER2 Protooncogene to the Clinic", *Journal of Clinical Immunology*, vol. 11, No. 3 (1991).
- Slamon et al., "Human Breast Cancer: Correlation of Relapse and Survival with Amplification of the HER-2/neu Oncogene", *Science*, vol. 235, pp. 177-182 (1987).
- Slamon et al., "Studies of the HER-2/neu Proto-Oncogene in Human Breast and Ovarian Cancer", *Science*, vol. 244, pp. 707-712 (1989).
- Sliwkowski et al., "Coexpression of erbB2 and erbB3 Proteins Reconstitutes a High Affinity Receptor for Heregulin", *The Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 269, No. 20, pp. 14661-16665 (1994).
- Spector et al., "Study of the Biologic Effects of Lapatinib, a Reversible Inhibitor of ErbB1 and ErbB2 Tyrosine Kinases, on Tumor Growth and Survival Pathways in Patients with Advanced Malignancies", *Jour. of Clin. Onc.*, vol. 23, No. 11, pp. 2502-2512 (2005).
- Stancovski et al., "Mechanistic Aspects of the Opposing Effects of Monoclonal Antibodies to the ERBB2 Receptor on Tumor Growth", *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 88, pp. 8691-8695 (1991).
- Tagliabue et al., "Selection of Monoclonal Antibodies which Induce Internalization and Phosphorylation of p185^{HER2} and Growth Inhibition of Cells with HER2/NEU Gene Amplification", *Int. J. Cancer*, vol. 47, pp. 933-937 (1991).
- Williams et al., "Expression of c-erbB-2 in Human Pancreatic Adenocarcinomas", *Pathobiology*, vol. 59, pp. 46-52 (1991).
- Xu et al., "Antibody-Induced Growth Inhibition is Mediated Through Immunochemically and Functionally Distinct Epitopes on the Extracellular Domain of the c-erbB-2 (HER-2/neu) Gene Product", *Int. J. Cancer*, vol. 53, pp. 401-408 (1993).
- Zhou et al., "Amplification and Expression of the c-erbB-2/neu Proto-Oncogene in Human Bladder Cancer", *Molecular Carcinogenesis*, vol. 3, pp. 254-257 (1990).
- King et al., "Amplification of a Novel v-erbB-Related Gene in a Human Mammary Carcinoma", *Science*, vol. 229, pp. 974-976 (1985).
- Fukushige et al., "Localization of a Novel v-erbB-Related Gene, c-erbB-2, on Human Chromosome 17 and its Amplification in a Gastric Cancer Cell Line", *Molecular and Cellular Biology*, vol. 6, No. 3, pp. 955-958 (1986).
- Database Chemabs Online!, Chemical Abstracts Service, Columbus, Ohio, US; Brechbiel, Martin W. et al.: "Synthesis and Evaluation of Antiproliferative Activity of a Geldanamycin-herceptin Immunoconjugate" Retrieved from STN Database Accession No. 2000:796068, XP002164006, Abstracts & Abstr. Pap.-Am. Chem. Soc. (2000), 220th, Medi-071.
- English translation of Technical Report No. GLMR11/00004 received Apr. 6, 2011, as issued in Costa Rica Patent Application No. 8319.
- Extended European Search Report dated Mar. 17, 2011, as issued in European Patent Application No. 10184672.3.

- Ludueno, R. F., et al., "Contrasting effects of maytansine and vinblastine on the alkylation of tubulin sulfhydryls", *Archives of Biochemistry and Biophysics*, vol. 210, No. 2, pp. 498-504, Sep. 1, 1981.
- Yalowich, J. C., "Effects of microtubule inhibitors on etoposide accumulation and DNA damage in human K562 cells in vitro", *Cancer Research*, vol. 47., No. 4, pp. 1010-1015, Feb. 15, 1987.
- Iwahashi, M., et al., "CDR substitutions of a humanized monoclonal antibody (CC49): contributions of individual CDRs to antigen binding and immunogenicity", *Molecular Immunology*, vol. 36, pp. 1079-1091, 1999.
- Partial European Search Report dated Dec. 3, 2010, as issued in European Patent Application No. 10184672.3.
- European Office Action dated Nov. 24, 2010, as issued in European Patent Application No. 00 970 516.1.
- Chou, T. C., et al., "Quantitative analysis of dose-effect relationships: the combined effects of multiple drugs or enzyme inhibitors", *Advances in Enzyme Regulation*, vol. 22, pp. 27-55, 1984.
- Chaemmaghami et al., "New Agents in the Treatment of Small Cell Lung Cancer", *Chest*, 113(1 Suppl):86S-91S (1998).
- Epstein et al., "Use of the Immunotoxin N901-Blocked Ricin in Patients with Small-Cell Lung Cancer", *Int. J. Cancer Suppl.*, 8:57-59 (1994).
- "Today's Drug Therapy" Nankodo Co., Ltd., Jun. 5, 1999, the second impression of the 21th edition, pp. 134 and 142-143 (1999 Edition). Notice of Reasons for Rejection dated Oct. 27, 2010, for JP Patent Application No. 2007-284684.
- Technical Report No. GLMR11/00004 received Apr. 6, 2011, as issued in Costa Rica Patent Application No. 8319.
- Tolcher, Anthony W., et al., "Phase I Pharmacokinetic and Biologic Correlative Study of Mapatumumab, a Fully Human Monoclonal Antibody with Agonist Activity to Tumor Necrosis Factor-Related Apoptosis-Inducing Ligand Receptor-1", *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, vol. 25, No. 11, pp. 1390-1396, Apr. 10, 2007.
- English translation of Japanese Office Action dated Jan. 4, 2011, as issued in Japanese Application No. 2006-533951.
- Arano, Y. et al., "A newly designed radioimmuno-conjugate releasing a hippurate-like radiometal chelate for enhanced target/non-target radioactivity", *Nuclear Medicine and Biology*, vol. 2, No. 1, pp. 63-69, Jan. 1, 1994.
- Hamann, P. R., "Monoclonal Antibody-Drug Conjugates", *Expert Opinion on Therapeutic Patents*, vol. 15, No. 9, pp. 1087-1103, Jan. 1, 2005.
- Lam, L. et al., "Recent Advances in Drug-Antibody Immunoconjugates for the Treatment of Cancer", *Drugs of the Future*, vol. 28, No. 9, pp. 905-910, Jan. 1, 2003.
- Supplementary European Search Report dated Jul. 1, 2010, as issued in European Patent Application No. 04793896.4.
- Chahinian, A. P., et al., "Treatment of invasive or metastatic thymoma: report of eleven cases", *Cancer*, vol. 47, No. 7, pp. 1752-1761, 1981.
- Aoe, et al., "Synergistic effect of docetaxel (DCT) and vinorelbine (VNB) against in vitro growth of a human small-cell lung cancer cell line", *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research*, vol. 37:375 (1996), Abstract No. 2560.
- Queen, C., et al., "A Humanized antibody that binds to the interleukin 2 receptor", *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 86, pp. 10029-10033, Dec. 1989.
- U.S. Appl. No. 60/488,447, filed Jul. 21, 2003, Gillian Payne, et al.
- Apelgren et al., *Cancer Research*, 50:3540-3544 (1990).
- Bai et al., *Cancer Research*, 56:4398-4406(1996).
- Burris III, "Docetaxel (Taxotere) in HER-2-positive patients and in combination with Trastuzumab (Herceptin)", *Seminars in Oncology*, 27(No. 2, Suppl. 3):19-23 (2000).
- Chan et al., "Synergistic effects of doxorubicin and modulators of multidrug resistance in small cell lung cancer (SCLC) cells naturally expressing MDR-1, MRP and LRP phenotypes", *Proceedings Am. Assoc. for Cancer Res.*, 38:591-592 (1997).
- Chari et al., "Dose-response of the anti-tumor effect of huN901-DM1 against human small-cell lung cancer xenografts", *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research*, 41:693 (2000).
- Christian et al., *Gynecologic Oncology*, 55:s143-s150 (1994).
- Dieras et al., 10th NCI-EORTC Symposium on New Drugs in Cancer Therapy, p. 100, Abstract Nos. and 383 (Jun. 1998).
- Doria et al., *Cancer*, 62:1939-1945 (1988).
- Embleton et al., *Br. J. Cancer*, 47:043-049 (1993).
- Examiner's Report issued in Australian Patent Application No. 2004282491 dated Aug. 21, 2009.
- Fedier et al., *Annals of Oncology*, 14:938-945 (2003).
- Fiorentino et al., *Dev. Oncol.*, 54:415-435 (1988).
- Fitzpatrick et al., *International Immunopharmacology*, 3: 1699-1714 (2003).
- Fornier et al., "Update on the management of advanced breast cancer", *Oncology*, 13(5):647-658 (1999).
- Ghaemmaghami et al., *Chest*, 113(Supp. 1):86s-91s (1998).
- Gianni et al., "Putting taxanes to work in operable breast cancer: a search for selective indications from empirical studies", *Recent Results in Cancer Research*, 152:314-322 (1998).
- Glisson et al., *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 17(8):2309-2315 (1999).
- Griffin et al., *The Journal of Immunology*, 130(6):2947-2951 (1983).
- Gu et al., "Synergistic effect of paclitaxel and 4-hydroxytamoxifen on estrogen receptor-negative colon cancer and lung cancer cell lines", *Anti-Cancer Research*, 10(10):895-901 (1999).
- Guchelaar et al., *Clinical Oncology*, 6:40-48 (1994).
- Gupta, "Cross-Resistance of Vinblastine and Taxol-Resistant Mutants of Chinese Hamster Ovary Cells to Other Anticancer Drugs." *Cancer Treatment Reports*, 69(5):515-521 (1985).
- Hortobagyi, "Docetaxel in breast cancer and a rationale for combination therapy", *Oncology*, 11(6):11-15 (1997).
- Hortobagyi, "Recent progress in clinical development of doxorubicin (Taxotere)", *Seminars in Oncology*, 26(No. 3, Suppl. 9):32-36 (1999).
- ImmunoGen, Inc., Press Release (Feb. 25, 1999).
- Iwasaki et al., *Yakugaku Zasshi*, 118:111-126 (1998).
- Jordan et al., "Tubulin as a Target for Anticancer Drugs: Agents Which Interact with the Mitotic Spindle." *Medicinal Research Reviews*, 18(4):259-296 (1998).
- Kaufman et al., "Utility of 123C3 monoclonal antibody against CD56 (NCAM) for the diagnosis of small cell carcinomas on paraffin sections", *Human Pathology*, 28(12):1373-1378 (1997).
- Kawai et al., "Chemical Modification of Ansamitocins. III. Synthesis and Biological Effects of 3-Acyl Esters of Maytansinol.", *Chemical and Pharmaceutical Bulletin*, 32(9):3441-3451 (1984).
- Kibbelaar et al., *Journal of Pathology*, 159:23-28 (1989).
- Krek et al., "Expression and secretion of a recombinant ricin immunotoxin from murine myeloma cells", *Protein Engineering*, 8(5):481-489 (1995).
- Laguzza et al., *J Med Chem.*, 32:548-555 (1989).
- Lidor et al., *Journal of Clinical Investigation*, 92:2440-2447 (1993).
- Liu et al., *Proc. Annu. Meet. Am. Assoc. Cancer Res.*, 38:29 (1997a).
- Liu et al., "Cure of large human colon cancer xenografts by a C242-maytansinoid conjugate", *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research*, 37(2):466-467 (1996b).
- Liu et al., "The development of antibody delivery systems to target cancer with highly potent maytansinoids", *Exp. opin. Invest. Drugs*, 6(2):169-172 (1997b).
- Lynch et al., "Immunotoxin therapy of small-cell lung cancer: a phase I study of N901-blocked ricin", *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 15(2):723-734 (1997).
- Mandler et al., "Synthesis and Evaluation of Antiproliferative Activity of a Geldanamycin-herceptin Immunoconjugate", *Bioorganic and Medicinal Chem. Letters*, 10:1025-1028 (2000).
- Mendelsohn et al., *Clin. Cancer Res.*, 3:2703-2707 (1997).
- Milas et al., "Enhancement of tumor radioresponse of a murine mammary carcinoma by paclitaxel", *Cancer Research*, 54(13):3506-3510 (1994).
- Morikawa et al., "Pulmonary malignant fibrous histiocytoma treated with cisplatin plus etoposide followed by surgery", *Nihon Kyobu Shikkan Gakkai Zasshi, Japanese Journal of Thoracic Diseases*, 33(9):993-998 (1995).
- Morris et al., *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 16(3):1094-1098 (1998).
- Nakajima et al., "Increase in the Chemically-Induced Differentiation of Human Leukemia Cell Lines by Tubulin Disruptors." *Biol. Pharm. Bull.*, 17(5):742-744 (1994).

- Nguyen et al., "Synergistic tumoricidal effect of the paclitaxel and 17 allylarnino geldanamycin (17AAG) combination in non-small cell lung cancer: in vitro and in vivo analysis", *Proceedings of the Am. Assoc. for Cancer Research*, 42:68-69 (2001).
- Norton et al., "Overall survival (OS) advantage to simultaneous chemotherapy (CRx) plus the humanized anti-HER2 monoclonal antibody Herceptin (H) in HER2-overexpressing (HER2+)", *Proc. Annu. Meet. Am. Soc. Clin. Oncol.*, 18:A483 (1999).
- Panda et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 95:9313-9318 (1998).
- Pegram et al., *Oncogene*, 18:2241-2251 (1998).
- Perez, "Current management of metastatic breast cancer", *Seminars in Oncology*, 26(No. 4, Suppl. 12):1-10 (1999a).
- Perez, "Paclitaxel plus nonanthracycline combinations in metastatic breast cancer, *Seminars in Oncology*", 26(No. 1, Suppl. 2):21-26 (1999b).
- Pettit et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 111:5463-5465 (1989).
- Pitot et al., *Clinical Cancer Research*, 5:525-531 (1999).
- Roguska et al., "A comparison of two murine monoclonal antibodies humanized by CDR-grafting and variable domain resurfacing", *Protein Engineering*, 9(10):895-904 (1996).
- Roguska et al., "Humanization of murine monoclonal antibodies through variable domain resurfacing", *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*, 91(3):969-973 (1994).
- Rosenblum et al., *Cancer Immunol. Immunother*, 42:115-121 (1996).
- Roy et al., "Elimination of neuroblastoma and small-cell lung cancer cells with an anti-neural cell adhesion molecule immunotoxin", *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 88(16):1136-1145 (1996).
- Rygaard et al., *Br. J. Cancer*, 65:573-577 (1992).
- Schlom, "Monoclonal Antibodies: They're More and Less Than You Think, In: *Molecular Foundations of Oncology*", Ed. S. Broder, pp. 95-134 (1991).
- Schrapppe et al., *Cancer Research*, 52:3838-3844 (1992).
- Siegall et al., *Proc. Annu. Meet. Am. Assoc. Cancer Res.*, 38:A185 (1997).
- Smith et al., *Cancer Research*, 54:3779-3784 (1994).
- Souhami, "The antigens of lung cancer", *Thorax*, 47: 53-56, (1992). Supplementary Partial European Search Report from EPA No. 00970516.1 (dated Jul. 12, 2004).
- Trail et al., "Enhanced antitumor activity of paclitaxel in combination with the anticarcinoma immunoconjugate BR96-doxorubicin", *Clinical Cancer Research*, 5(11):3632-3638 (1999).
- Villalona-Calero, *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 16(8):2770-2779 (1998).
- Vogel et al., "Monotherapy of metastatic breast cancer: a review of newer agents", *Oncologist*, 4(1):17-33 (1999).
- Watson et al., *Proc. Annu. Meet. Am. Assoc. Cancer Res.*, 37:A2997 (1996).
- Yeh et al., "Growth inhibitory action of brefeldin A with taxol and tiiazofurin in human breast carcinoma cells", *Cancer Biochemistry Biophysics*, 15(1):11-17 (1995).
- Yeh, et al., "Synergistic effect of docetaxel (DCT) and vinorelbine (VNB) against in vitro growth of a human small-cell lung cancer cell line", *Proceedings of the American Association for Cancer Research*, 37:375 (1996).

* cited by examiner

VARIABLE HEAVY DOMAIN

2C4 10 20 30 40
 EVQLQQSGPELVKPGTSVKISKAS [GFTFTDYTMD] WVKQS * *
 ** ** * * * * * *
 574 10 20 30 40
 EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAAS [GFTFTDYTMD] WVRQA * *
 ** ** * * * * * *
 hum III 10 20 30 40
 EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAAS [GFTFESSYAMS] WVRQA * *
 ** ** * * * * * *

2C4 50 60 70 80
 HGKSLWIG [DVNPNSSGGSIYNQRFKG] KASLTVDRSSRIVYM * *
 * * ** * * * * * *
 574 50 60 70 80
 PGKGLEWVA [DVNPNSSGGSIYNQRFKG] RFTLSVDRSKNTLYL * *
 * * * * * * * * * * * *
 hum III 50 60 70 80
 PGKGLEWVA [VISGDGGSTYYADSVKKG] RFTISRDNKNTLYL * *
 * * * * * * * * * * * *

2C4 abc 90 100ab 110
 ELRSLTFEDTAVYYCAR [NLGPSFYFDY] WGQGTLLTVSS * *
 *** ** * * * * * *
 574 abc 90 100ab 110
 QMNSLRAEDTAVYYCAR [NLGPSFYFDY] WGQGTLLTVSS * *
 * * * * * * * * * * * *
 hum III abc 90 100ab 110
 QMNSLRAEDTAVYYCAR [GRVGYSLYDY] WGQGTLLTVSS * *
 * * * * * * * * * * * *

FIG. 1

Variable Light Domain

```

10      20      30      40
2C4    DTVMTQSHKIMSTSVGDRVSITC [KASQDVSIGVA] WYQQRP
      **      **** *
574    DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGRVITIC [KASQDVSIGVA] WYQQKP
      *      ** ***
hum KI  DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGRVITIC [KASQDVSIGVA] WYQQKP

50      60      70      80
2C4    GQSPKLLIY [SASYRYT] GVPDRFTGSGSGTDFFTISSLVQA
      **      * *
574    GKAPKLLIY [SASYRYT] GVPSRFSGSGSGTDFLTITISLQP
      * ****
hum KI  GKAPKLLIY [AASSLES] GVPSRFSGSGSGTDFLTITISLQP

90      100
2C4    EDLAVYYC [QYYIYPYT] FGGGKLEIKRT
      * *
574    EDFATYYC [QYYIYPYT] FGQGTKVEIKRT
      *** *
hum KI  EDFATYYC [QYNSLPWT] FGQGTKVEIKRT
    
```

FIG. 2

Maytansinoids
(DM1)

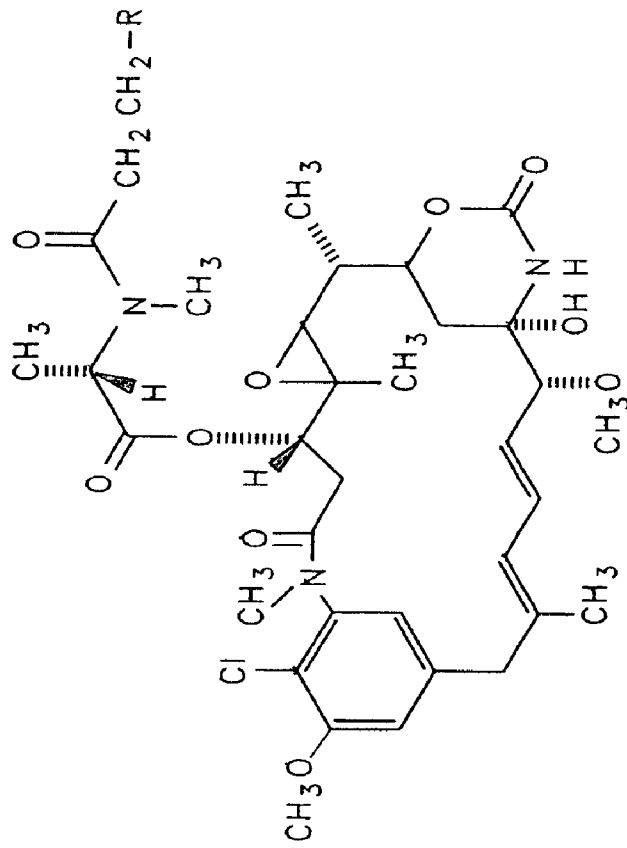


FIG. 3

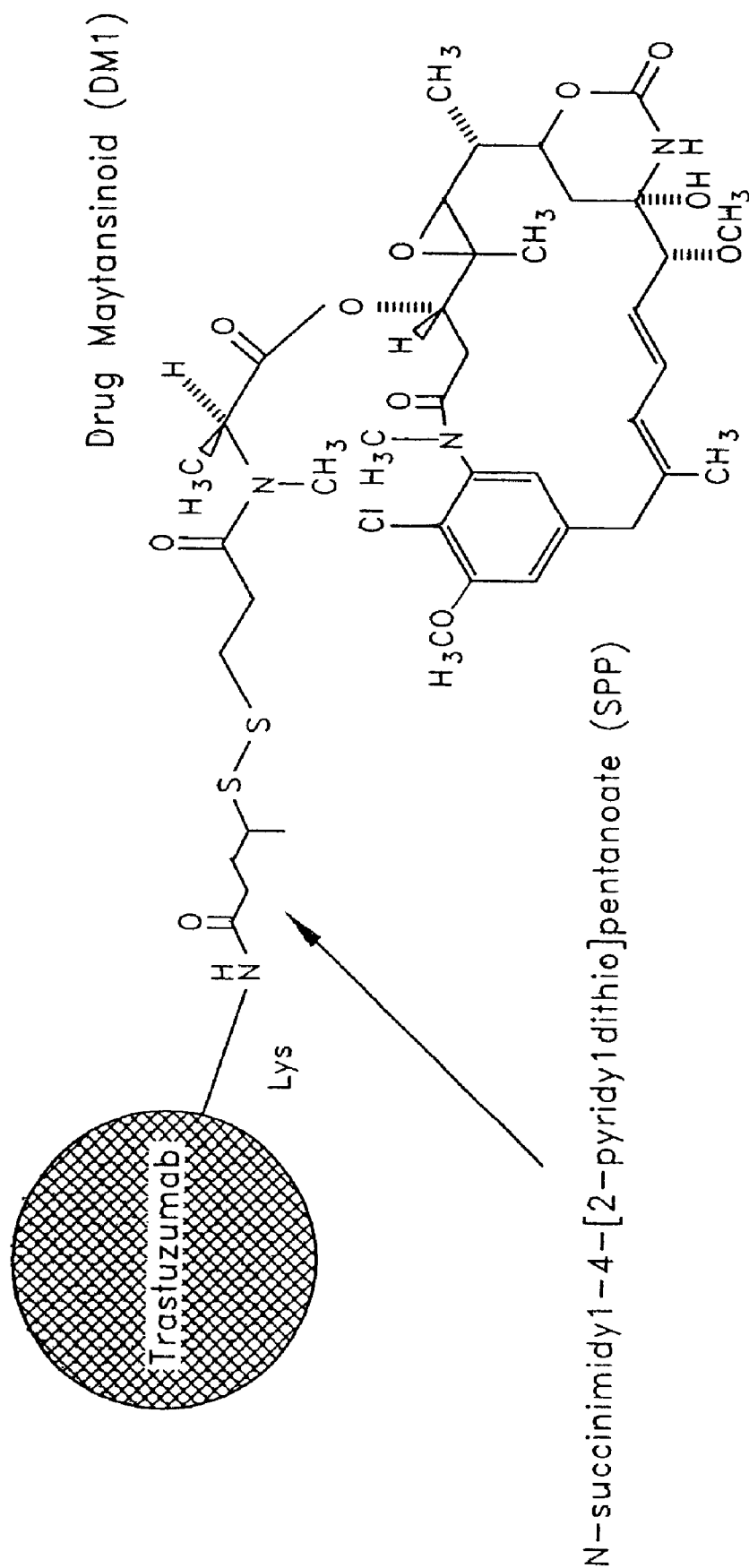


FIG. 4

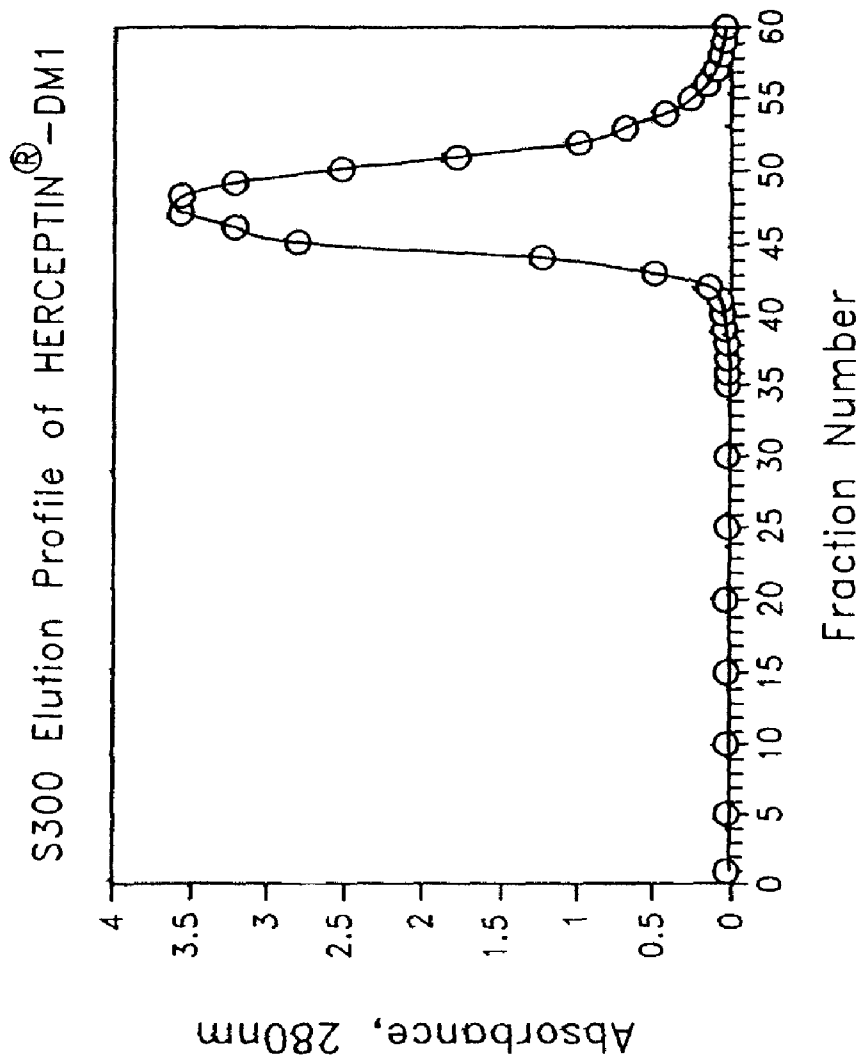


FIG. 5

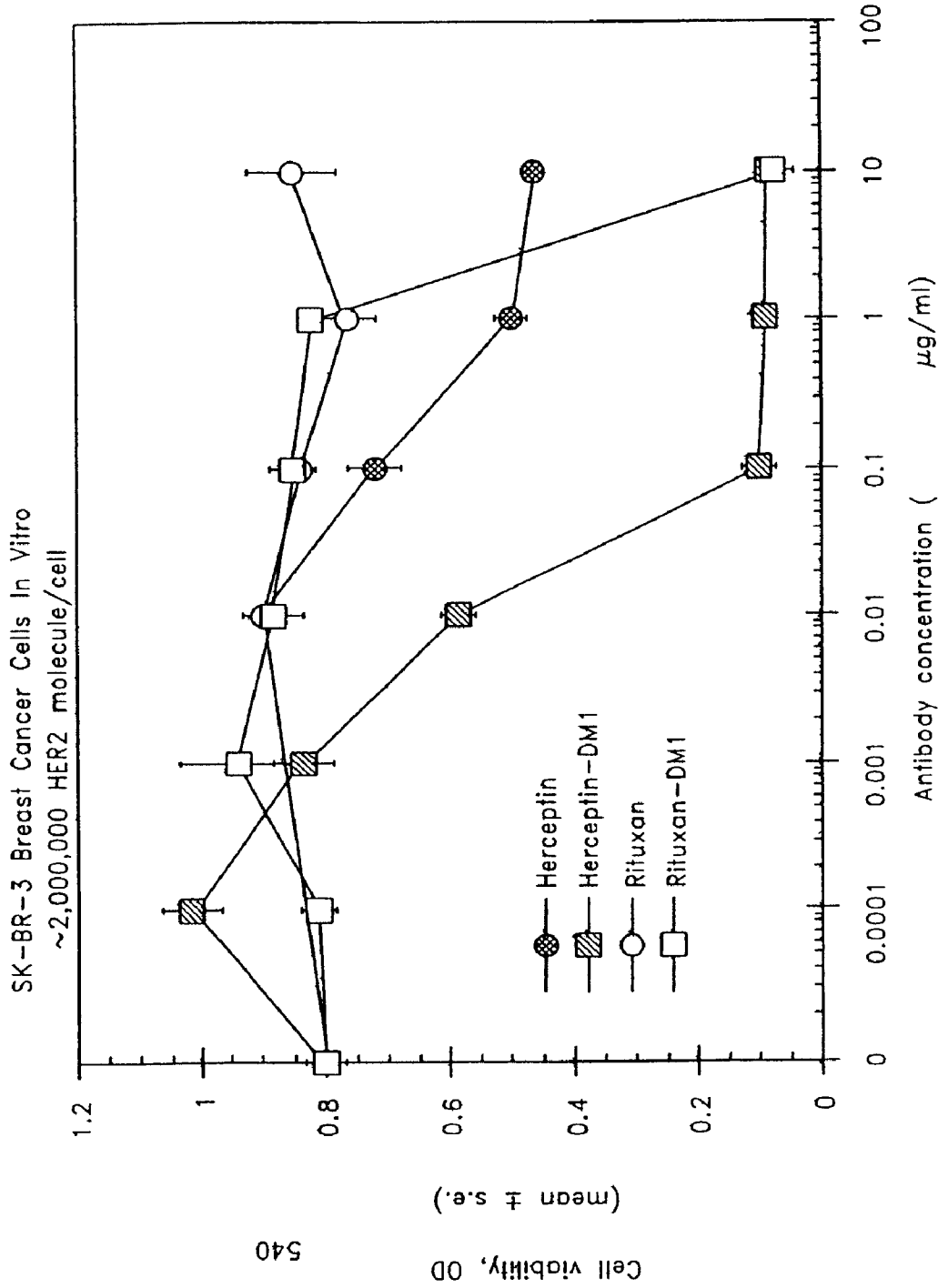


FIG. 6

```

1  rmaI          sau3AI   maeI          rmaI
   hgiAI/asphi  sau3AI   maeI          rmaI
   mboI/ndeII  mboI/ndeII
   dpnII bsp1286  dpnII  nheI          nlaIII  tseI          rmaI
   pvuI/bspCI  mseI   nlaIII  thai  cac8I  tseI          fnu4HI/bsoFI  maeI
   mcrI   bsiHKAI  tsp509I  fnuDII/mvni  cac8I  scfI          bbvI          bfal
   bsiEI  bmyI   aseI/asni/vspi  bstUI  bfal  aluI  nspi  pstI          bsaJI
   taqI   apaLI/snoI  rcaI   bsh1236I  fnu4HI/bsoFI  cac8I          blnI
   aluI  dpnI  alw4I/snoI  bspHI  nruI  aluI  bbvI  cac8I  bsgI          avrII
   1  RAGCTCGATC  GGTCACACATT  AATTTCATGAT  CGCGAGCTAG  CAGGTTGCAT  GCCTGCAGCA  GAAATGGTTG  AACTCCCGAG  AGTGTCCTAC  ACCTAGGGGA
   TTCGAGCTAG  CCACGTGTAA  TTRAGTACTA  GCGCTCGATC  GTCGAACGTA  CGGACGTGCT  CTTTACCAAC  TTGAGGGCTC  TCACAGGATG  TGGATCCCCC
   ^start of linker 1
   ^end of linker 1
   ^start of MMTV promoter
   hgiJII
   styI          bsaJI          tseI          mwoI
   fnu4HI/bsoFI  bsaJI  ahdI/eaml105I  styI  bcgI          fnu4HI/bsoFI
   bbvI          bsaJI  ahdI/eaml105I  styI  bcgI          tseI
   hinPI          hhaI/cfoI          msti          avrII/fspi  foki          fnu4HI/bsoFI
   bmyI          banII          bstF5I          bbvI
   101  GAAGCAGCCA  AGGGTTGTT  TCCCACCAAG  GACGACCCGT  CTGGCCACAA  ACGGATGAGC  CCATCAGACA  AAGACATATT  CATCTCTGC  TGCAAACTTG
   CTTCGTCGGT  TCCCCAACAA  AGGGTGGTTC  CTGCTGGGCA  GACCGGTGTT  TGCCACTCG  GGTAGTCTGT  TTCTGTATRA  GTAAGAGACG  ACGTTTGAAC
   mwoI          cac8I          hgiJII          mboII
   hgiAI/asphi  bsp1286  bsp1286          earI/ksp632I
   bsiHKAI          bmyI          pleI          tru9I  sapi          mami
   mwoI          aciI          bmyI          banII  hphi          mseI  aluI          bsaBI
   aluI          mwoI          aciI          bmyI          banII  hphi          mseI  aluI          bsaBI
   201  GCATAGCTCT  GCTTTGCTGG  GGCAATGGGG  GAAGTTGGGG  TTCTGCTCTC  CAGGGCTCTC  ACCCTTGACT  CTTTAAATAG  CTCTTCTGTG  CAAGATTACA
   CGTATCGAGA  CGRAAGGACC  CCGTAACCCC  CTTCAACGCC  AAGCAGAGCC  GTCCCGAGAG  TGGGAACTGA  GAAAATTATC  GAGAAGACAC  GTTCTATATG

```

FIG. 7A

mnlI sau96I
 ddeI avaiI
 eco8II asuI
 tsp509I tagI mnlI mstII/sauI
 301 ATCTAAACAA TTCGGAGAAC TCACCTTCC TCTCTGAGG CAAAGGACCAC AGCCAACCTC CTCTTACAAAG CGCGRICGAT TTTGTCCCTC AGAAATAGAA
 TAGATTTGTT AAGCCCTTTG AGCTGGAAGG AGAGGACTCC GTTCCCTGGT TCGGTTGAAG GAGAATGTTT GCGGTAGCTA AAACAGGAAG TCTTTATCTT
 claI/bsp106
 bspDI
 sfanI
 acilI taqI
 fnu4HI/bsOFI
 eco57I
 cac8I
 bsmI tsp509I
 401 ATRAAATGC TTGCTAABAA TTATATTTT ACCAATAAGA CCAATCCAAT AGGTAGATTA TTAGTTACTA TGTTAAGAAA TGAATCATTG TCTTTTAGTA
 TATCTTTAGC AACGATTTT ATATATAAAA TGGTTATCTT GGTAGGTTA TCCATCTAAT ATCAATGAT ACAATTTCTT ACTTAGTAAAT AGAAATCAT
 rsaI
 tfilI
 mseI
 hinFI
 scaI
 tsp509I
 apoI
 501 CTATTTTAC TCAATTCAG AAGTTAGAAA TGGAATAGA ABATAGABAG AGACGCTCAA CCTCAATTGA AGAACAGGTG CRAAGGACTAT TGACCACAGG
 GATAAAAATG AGTTAAGTC TTCAATCTTT ACCCTTATCT TTTATCTTTC TCTGCGAGTT GGAGTTACT TCTTGTCCAC GTTCTTGATA ACTGGTGTCC
 hgaI
 esp3I tsp509I haeIII/p
 bsmBI muni/mfeI stuI
 bsmAI mnlI mboII haeI
 CTTCAATTGA AGAACAGGTG CRAAGGACTAT TGACCACAGG
 rmaI
 maeI
 bfaI
 601 CCTAGAGTA AAAAAGGAA AAGAGTGT TTTTGTCAA ATAGGAGACA GGTGGTGGCA ACCAGGACT TATAGGGGAC CTTACATCTA CAGACCAACA
 GGATCTTCAT TTTTCCCTT TTTTCTACA AAAACAGTTT TATCTCTGT CCACCACCCT TGGTCCCTGA ATATCCCTG GAATGTAGAT GTCTGGTGTG
 bsmFI
 scrFI
 mvaiI sau96I
 ecorII avaiI
 dsav asuI
 bstNI ppumI
 bskI nlaIV
 bsaJI ecoO109I/draII
 apyI bsmFI scfI
 mnlI
 sau3AI
 mboI/ndeII
 dpnII
 dpnI
 alwI
 bstYI/khcII
 mnlI
 sau3AI
 mboI/ndeII
 dpnII
 dpnI
 alwI
 bstYI/khcII
 701 GATGCCCTT ACCATATAC AGGAAGATAT GACTTAAAT GGGATAGGTG GGTACAGTC AATGGCTATA AAGTGTATA TAGATCCCTC CCTTTTGGT
 CTACGGGGA ATGGTATATG TCCTTCTATA CTGAATTTTA CCATATCCAC CCAATGTGAC TTACCGATAT TTACAGATAT ATCTAGGGAG GGAAGACAC

FIG. 7B

```

rmaI          styI          nlaIII          rmaI          nlaIII
maeI          bsaJI          rsaI          maeI          rsaI
bfaI          mnlI          csp6I          bfaI          csp6I
allu          mnlI          bsmAI          bsmI          bsmI
pleI          mnlI          bsmAI          bsmI          bsmI
hinfi         mnlI          bsmAI          bsmI          bsmI
801 AAAGACTCGC CAGAGCTAGA CCTCCTTGGT GTATGTTGTC TCAAGAGAAA AAAGACGACA TGAACAACA GGTACATGAT TATATTTATC TAGGAACAGG
TTTCTGAGCG GTCTCGATCT GGAGGAACCA CATAACAACAG AGTTCCTCTT TTTCTGCTGT ACTTTGTTGT CCAIGTACTA ATATAAATAG ATCCTTTGTC
      tspRI
      styI          alwNI
      bslI          bsmFI
      bslI bsaJI mnlI          alw26I/bsmAI          nlaIII
901 AATGCACATT TGGGGAAGA TTTCCATAC CAAGGAGGGG ACAGTGGCTG GACTAATAGA ACATTAATCT GCAAAAACCTT ATGGCATGAG TTATTATGAA
TTACGTGAAA ACCCCCTTCT AAAAGGTATG GTTCCCTCCC TGTCACCGAC CTGATTATCT TGTAAAPAAGA CGTTTTTGAA TACCGTACTC AATAATACTT
      tru9I          foki
      sau96I         styI          msei          bstF5I
      haeIII/palI   nlaIV          smlI          mnlI          bsmAI
      asuI          aciI          bsaJI          aflII/bfri          maeIII          mnlI          bsmAI
001 TAGCCTTTAT TGGCCCAACC TTGGGTTCC CAAGGCTTAA GTPAAGTTTT GGTACAAAAC TGTTCCTAAA ACGAGATGT GAGACAAGTG CTTTGGTGGC
ATCGGAAATA ACCGGTTGG AACGCCAAGG GTTCCGAATT CATTCAAAA CCAATGTTG ACAAGAATTT TGCTCCTACA CTCTGTTCAC CAAAGGACTG
      sstI
      sacI
      hgiJII
      hgiAI/aspHI
      ecl136II
      bsp1286
      bsiHKAI
      bmyI
      ddeI
      sau3AI
      mboI/ndeII
      dpnII aluI
      dpnI banII ddeI
      tps509I
      apoI
101 TTGGTTTGGT ATCAAAGGTT CTGATCTGAG CTCTGAGTGT TCTATTTTCC TATGTTCTTT TCGAATTTAT CCAAATCTTA TGTAAATGCT TAATGTAACC
AACCAAACCA TAGTTTCCAA GACTAGACTC GAGACTCACA AGATAAAGG ATACAAGAAA ACCTTAATA GGTTPAGAAT ACAATTTACGA ATACATTTGG

```

FIG. 7C


```

sau96I          hgiAI/aspHI
avaII           bsp1286
asuI           bsiHKAI
nlaIV          hpaII          cac8I
scrFI          nlaIV          thaI
nciI           fnuDII/mvni
mspI           dsav          bstUI          mslI
hpaII          cauII          bsh1236I
dsav           bssKI          aciI          bmyI
mnlI           mspAII/nspBII          mnlI          bsaJI          fnu4HI/bsoFI
mwoI           fnu4HI/bsoFI          aciI          bmyI          bseRI          mnlI
hinPI          nlaIV          hgiJII          bsp1286          mnlI
hhaI/cfoI      mspI           dsav          bstUI          mslI          mnlI
1701 GCGCCCTCCC AGCCGGGTCC AGCCGGGTCC ATGGAGCTGG CCGCCTGTGG CCGCTGGGG CTCCTCCTCG CCCTCTTGCC CCCCAGGACC GCGAGCACCC
CGCGGGAGGG TCGGCCCAGG TCGGCCCTGG TACTCGACC GCCGGACAC GCGGACCCCC GAGGAGGAGC GGGGACACGG GGGCCTCG P G A A S T Q
M E L A A L C R W G L L L A L L P P G A A S T Q

```

1

```

mspI           scrFI
cfr10I/bsrFI  mvaI          ecorII
hgiAI/aspHI   mvaI          dsav
bsp1286       ecorII        bstNI
bsiHKAI       mslI          bssKI
bmyI hpaII    tseI          apyI
apaLI/snoI    fnu4HI/bsoFI          bsmAI          bsmFI          mnlI          bssKI          tseI
alw4I/snoI    nlaIV          bsrI          avaI          apyI          nspI          aciI          bslI          apyI          bbvI
1801 AAGTGTCC CCGCACAC ATGAAGCTGC GGCTCCCTGC CAGTCCGAG ACCCACCTGG ACATGCTCG CACCTTAC CAGGGTCC AGGTGGTGA
TTCACAGTG GCCGTGTCTG TACTCGAG CCGAGGACG GTCAGGGTC TGGGTGGACC TGTACGAGC GGTGGAGATG GTCCCAGCG TCCACCACGT
25 V C T G T D M K L R L P A S P E T H L D M L R H L Y Q G C Q V V Q

```

```

scrFI          hgiAI/aspHI
mvaI           bsp1286
ecorII        bsiHKAI
dsav          bmyI
bstNI         tail
bssKI        maeII
apyI         hpaII          bspMI          cac8I          bsaAI
hphI         bspMI          hphI          bspMI          cac8I          bsaAI
1901 GGGAAACCTG GAACTCACCT ACCTGCCAC CAATGCCAGC CTGTCCCTCC TGCAGGATAT CCAGGAGGTG CAGGGCTAGC TGCTCATCGC TCACAACCAA
CCCTTTGGAC CTGTAGTGGG TGGAGGGGTG GTTACGGTCC GACAGGAGG ACGTCTATA GGTCCTCCAC GTCCCAGTGC ACGAGTAGCG AGTGTGGTT
58 G N L E L T Y I P T N A S L S F L Q D I Q E V Q G Y V L I A H N Q

```

FIG. 7F

xcmI sau3AI scrFI mboI/ndeII dpmI bstYI/xhoII nlaIV mspI hpaII aluI ddeI bpuAI
 scrFI mboI/ndeII mvaI dpmI bstNI bssKI apyI hpaII aluI hpaII mnlI mnlI bbsI
 mvaI ecorII dsav tseI fnu4HI/bsoFI bglIII mboII nlaIV mspI hpaII aluI hpaII mnlI mnlI bbsI
 ecorII dsav tseI fnu4HI/bsoFI bglIII mboII nlaIV mspI hpaII aluI hpaII mnlI mnlI bbsI
 dsav bstNI bssKI apyI cac8I mboII nlaIV mspI hpaII aluI hpaII mnlI mnlI bbsI
 bssKI apyI cac8I mboII nlaIV mspI hpaII aluI hpaII mnlI mnlI bbsI
 tspRI ATCCAGGAGT TTGCTGGCTG CAAGAAGATC TTGGATTTCT TGGCATTTCT GCCGGAGAGC TTGTATGGGG ACCCAGCCTC CAACACTGCC
 801 GTCACGGTTA TAGGTCCTCA AACGACCGAC GTTCTTCTAG AACCCCTCG ACCGTAAGA CGGCCTCTCG AACTACCC TGGTGGGAG GTTGTGACGG
 358 S A N I Q E F A G C K K I F G S L A F L P E S F D G D P A S N T A
 bpmI/gsuI tseI aluI mspI hpaII haeIII/palI ddeI bpuAI
 bsrBI fnu4HI/bsoFI pleI hinfI mboII dpmI maeIII hpaII haeIII/palI eaeI mnlI bbsI
 aciI mwOI bbVI bsmAI earI/ksp632I bstEII ddeI nlaIII cac8I drdI hgaI
 901 CCGTCCAGC CAGAGCAGCT CCAAGTGTTF GAGACTCTGG AAGAGATCAC AGTTACTTA TACATCTCAG CATGGCCGGA CAGCCTGCCT GACCTCAGCG
 GGCAGGTCG GTCCTGTCGA GGTTCACAAA CTCTGAGACC TTCTCTAGTG TCCAATGAT ATGTAGAGTC GTACCGGCCT GTCGGACGGA CTGGAGTCG
 391 P L Q P E Q L Q V F E T L E E I T G Y L Y I S A W P D S L P D L S V
 bsmFI hinPI hhaI/cfoI
 scrFI nlaIV nari kasi hinII/acyI hgiCI haeII eheI
 nciI mspI hpaII dsav cauII tsp509I tseI
 hpaII dsav cauII bssKI bsaJI apoI ahaII/bsaHI mwOI bslI sfaNI aluI mwOI bbVI tspRI
 001 mboII bspMI ATCCGGGAC GAATTTCTGCA CAATGGGCC TACTCGCTGA CCTTGGGAAGG GCTGGGCATC ACCTGGCTGG GGCTGGGCTC
 AGAAGGTCCT GGACGTTTCAT TAGGCCCTG CTTAAGACGT GTTACCGCGG ATGAGCGACT GGGACCTCC CGACCGTAG TCGACCGACC CCGACCGGAG
 425 F Q N L Q V I R G R I L H N G A Y S L T L Q G L G I S W L G L R S
 alwNI alw26I/bsmAI mspAI/nspBII fnu4HI/bsoFI
 hinPI hhaI/cfoI
 pvuII cac8I
 tseI
 mspAI/nspBII fnu4HI/bsoFI
 sfaNI aluI mwOI bbVI tspRI
 GGCTGGGCTC
 CCGACCGGAG
 L R S

FIG. 7J


```

scrFI          scrFI          scrFI          scrFI          scrFI          scrFI          scrFI          scrFI          scrFI          scrFI
mvaI          mvaI          mvaI          mvaI          mvaI          mvaI          mvaI          mvaI          mvaI          mvaI
ecorII        ecorII        ecorII        ecorII        ecorII        ecorII        ecorII        ecorII        ecorII        ecorII
dsav          dsav          dsav          dsav          dsav          dsav          dsav          dsav          dsav          dsav
bstNI        bstNI        bstNI        bstNI        bstNI        bstNI        bstNI        bstNI        bstNI        bstNI
bssKI        bssKI        bssKI        bssKI        bssKI        bssKI        bssKI        bssKI        bssKI        bssKI
apyI          apyI          apyI          apyI          apyI          apyI          apyI          apyI          apyI          apyI
mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI
haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI
sau96I        sau96I        sau96I        sau96I        sau96I        sau96I        sau96I        sau96I        sau96I        sau96I
asuI          asuI          asuI          asuI          asuI          asuI          asuI          asuI          asuI          asuI
nlaIV        nlaIV        nlaIV        nlaIV        nlaIV        nlaIV        nlaIV        nlaIV        nlaIV        nlaIV
bsrI          bsrI          bsrI          bsrI          bsrI          bsrI          bsrI          bsrI          bsrI          bsrI
hincII/hindII hincII/hindII hincII/hindII hincII/hindII hincII/hindII hincII/hindII hincII/hindII hincII/hindII hincII/hindII hincII/hindII
01  GGGCCACCCA GTGTGTCAC TGAGCCAGT TCCTTCGGGG CCAGGAGTGC GTGGAGGAAT GCCGAGTACT GCAGGGGCTC CCCAGGGGAGT AIGTGAATGC
CCGGGTGGGT CACACAGTTG ACGTCGGTCA AGGAAGCCCC GGTCTCAGC CACCTCCTTA CCGTCAATGA CGTCCCCGAG GGTCCCCCTCA TACTACTTACG
525  P T Q C V N C S Q F L R G Q E C V E E C R V L Q G L P R E Y V N A
draIII        draIII        draIII        draIII        draIII        draIII        draIII        draIII        draIII        draIII
tspRI        tspRI        tspRI        tspRI        tspRI        tspRI        tspRI        tspRI        tspRI        tspRI
mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI
bstAPI        bstAPI        bstAPI        bstAPI        bstAPI        bstAPI        bstAPI        bstAPI        bstAPI        bstAPI
alwNI        alwNI        alwNI        alwNI        alwNI        alwNI        alwNI        alwNI        alwNI        alwNI
alw26I/bsmAI alw26I/bsmAI alw26I/bsmAI alw26I/bsmAI alw26I/bsmAI alw26I/bsmAI alw26I/bsmAI alw26I/bsmAI alw26I/bsmAI alw26I/bsmAI
401  CAGGCACACTGT TTGCCGTGG ACCCTGAGTG TCAGCCCCAG AATGGCTCAG TGACCTGTGT TGGACCCGGAG GCTGACCAGT GTGTGGCCTG TGCCCCACTAT
GTCCCGTGACA AAGGCCACGG TGGGACTCAC AGTCGGGGTC TTACCGAGTC ACTGGACAAA ACCTGGCCTC CGACTGGTCA CACACCCGGAC ACGGGTGATA
558  R H C L P C H P E C Q P Q N G S V T C F G P E A D Q C V A C A H Y
tsei          tsei          tsei          tsei          tsei          tsei          tsei          tsei          tsei          tsei
mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI          mwoI
fnu4HI/bsofI fnu4HI/bsofI fnu4HI/bsofI fnu4HI/bsofI fnu4HI/bsofI fnu4HI/bsofI fnu4HI/bsofI fnu4HI/bsofI fnu4HI/bsofI fnu4HI/bsofI
mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII
aciI          aciI          aciI          aciI          aciI          aciI          aciI          aciI          aciI          aciI
cac8I        cac8I        cac8I        cac8I        cac8I        cac8I        cac8I        cac8I        cac8I        cac8I
sau96I        sau96I        sau96I        sau96I        sau96I        sau96I        sau96I        sau96I        sau96I        sau96I
haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI  haeIII/palI
aciI          aciI          aciI          aciI          aciI          aciI          aciI          aciI          aciI          aciI
mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII mspAII/nbspBII
eco0109I/draII mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI mwoI
501  AAGGACCTC CCTTCTGGT GGGCCGCTGC CCCAGCGGTG TGAACCTGA CCTCTCCTAC ATGCCCATCT GGAAGTTCC AGATGAGGAG GGGCCATGCC
TTCCCTGGAG GGAAGACGCA CCGGGGAGC GGGTCGCCAC ACTTTGACT GGAGAGGATG TACGGGTAGA CCTTCAAGG TCTACTCCTC CCGCGTACGG
591  K D P P F C V A R C P S G V K P D L S Y M P I W K F P D E E G A C Q

```

FIG. 7L

sau3AI
 hinPI mboI/ndeII
 hhaI/cfoI dpnII
 scrFI nlaIV
 mvaI bstYI/xhoII
 ecoRII bamHI
 dsav aciI
 rmaI
 mspAlI/nspBII
 aciI maeI
 fnu4HI/bsOfI aciI
 mwoI
 aluI nlaIV
 CCGAGCTGGT GGAGCCGCTG ACACCTAGCG GAGCGATGCC sfaNI
 CTGCAGGAAA CGGAGCTGGT GGAGCCGCTG ACACCTAGCG GAGCGATGCC sfaNI
 GACGTCCTTT GCCTCGACCA CCTCGGCCGAC TGTGGATCGC CTCGCTACGG
 E P L T P S G A M P N Q A Q M R I L K E T E L R K V R
 691 L Q E T E L V E P L T P S G A M P N Q A Q M R I L K E T E L R K V R
 scfI
 pstI mwoI
 bsgI aluI nlaIV
 801 CTGCAGGAAA CGGAGCTGGT GGAGCCGCTG ACACCTAGCG GAGCGATGCC sfaNI
 GACGTCCTTT GCCTCGACCA CCTCGGCCGAC TGTGGATCGC CTCGCTACGG
 E P L T P S G A M P N Q A Q M R I L K E T E L R K V R
 691 L Q E T E L V E P L T P S G A M P N Q A Q M R I L K E T E L R K V R

bslI
 sau3AI
 mboI/ndeII
 dpnII
 dpnI
 alwI
 nlaIV
 bstYI/xhoII
 bamHI
 mscI/balI
 haeI
 eaeI
 tspRI
 tsp509I cfrI mslI
 apoI bsrI haeIII/pali
 nlaIV
 hgiJII
 bsp1286
 bmyI
 banII ndeI bsmAI bglI
 nlaIV
 hgiJII
 bsp1286
 bmyI
 banII ndeI bsmAI bglI
 001 AACACATCC CCCAAGCCA ACAAGAAT CTTAGACGAA GCATACGTA TGGCTGGTGT
 TTTGTGTAGG GGGTTTCGGT TGTTCCTTTA GAATCTGCTT CGTATGCACT ACCGACCACA
 758 N T S P K A N K E I L D E A Y V M A G V G S P Y V S R L L G I C L

bslI
 sau3AI
 mboI/ndeII
 dpnII
 dpnI
 alwI
 nlaIV
 bstYI/xhoII
 bamHI
 mscI/balI
 haeI
 eaeI
 tspRI
 tsp509I cfrI mslI
 apoI bsrI haeIII/pali
 nlaIV
 hgiJII
 bsp1286
 bmyI
 banII ndeI bsmAI bglI
 nlaIV
 hgiJII
 bsp1286
 bmyI
 banII ndeI bsmAI bglI
 001 AACACATCC CCCAAGCCA ACAAGAAT CTTAGACGAA GCATACGTA TGGCTGGTGT
 TTTGTGTAGG GGGTTTCGGT TGTTCCTTTA GAATCTGCTT CGTATGCACT ACCGACCACA
 758 N T S P K A N K E I L D E A Y V M A G V G S P Y V S R L L G I C L

FIG. 7N

```

sau96I
scrFI      avaiI
mvaI      asuI
ecorII    ppuMI
          dsav  scrFI
          bstNI  mvaI
          fnuDII/mvni hgiJII alwNI
          bstUI  bssKI  ecorII
          bsh1236I bsaJI  dsav
          sacII/satII bsp1286 ecoO109I/draII
          mspAII/nspBII bmyI  bstNI
          kspI    apyI nlaIV alw26I/bsmAII
          dsaI  hinII/acyI  bssKI
          bsaJI hgaI  baniI apyI
          aciI  anaII/bsaHI  bsaJI  bspMI
          acII  ahaII/bsaHI  bsaJI  bspMI
          GCGGAAAACC GCGGACGCCCT GGGTCCCCAG GACCTGCTGA
          CGCCTTGTGG CGCCTGGGA CCGGAGGGTC CTGGACGACT
          G R L G S Q D L L N

          xcmI
          dsal  mspAII/nspBII
          bsaJI  tseI  maeIII
          foki  fnu4HI/bsoFI
          bstF5I  bbvI hphI  aluI
          ACATCCACGG TGCAGCTGCT GACACAGCTT ATGCCCTATG GCTGCCCTCTT AGACCATGTC CCGGAAAACC GCGGACGCCCT GGGTCCCCAG GACCTGCTGA
          TGTAGGTGCC ACGTGACCA CTGTGTCGAA CTGTGTCGAA TACGGGATAC CGACGGAGAA TCTGGTACAG GCCCTTTGG G R L G S Q D L L N
          791 T S T V Q L V T Q L M P Y G C L L D H V R E N R G R L G S Q D L L N

          aluI
          pvuII tsp45I
          mspAII/nspBII
          tseI  maeIII
          fnu4HI/bsoFI
          bbvI hphI  aluI
          TGCAGCTGCT GACACAGCTT ATGCCCTATG GCTGCCCTCTT AGACCATGTC CCGGAAAACC GCGGACGCCCT GGGTCCCCAG GACCTGCTGA
          TGTAGGTGCC ACGTGACCA CTGTGTCGAA CTGTGTCGAA TACGGGATAC CGACGGAGAA TCTGGTACAG GCCCTTTGG G R L G S Q D L L N
          4101 ACATCCACGG TGCAGCTGCT GACACAGCTT ATGCCCTATG GCTGCCCTCTT AGACCATGTC CCGGAAAACC GCGGACGCCCT GGGTCCCCAG GACCTGCTGA
          TGTAGGTGCC ACGTGACCA CTGTGTCGAA CTGTGTCGAA TACGGGATAC CGACGGAGAA TCTGGTACAG GCCCTTTGG G R L G S Q D L L N
          791 T S T V Q L V T Q L M P Y G C L L D H V R E N R G R L G S Q D L L N

          mnII
          bpmI/gsuI
          scrFI
          mvaI
          ecorII
          dsav
          bstNI  fnu4HI/bsoFI
          styI  foki aluI
          bsaJI  bstF5I  apyI  bstF5I  foki aciI  rsal
          ACTGGTGTAT GCAGATGCC AAGGGATGA GCTACCTGGA GGATGTGGG CTGGTACACA GGGACTTGGC CGTCTGGAAC GTGCTGGTCA AGACTCCCAA
          TGACCACATA CGTCTAACGG TTCCCCTACT CGATGGACCT CCTACACGCC GAGCATGTGT CCTGAAACC GCGGACGCCCT GGGTCCCCAG GACCTGCTGA
          825 W C M Q I A K G M S Y L E D V R L V H R D L A A R N V L V K S P N

          nlaIII
          bstXI
          rsal mslI
          rsal csp6I
          bsmAI
          bsmAI
          fnu4HI/bsoFI
          bbvI
          mwoI  cac8I
          tsp509I  TCGGGCTGGC TCGGGCTGGC AGCCGACCG AGCCGACCG CTGTACTGC TCTGTCTCAT GGTACTCTA CCCCCGTCC ACGGGTAGTT CACCTACCGC
          CCATGTCAA ATTACAGACT TCGGGCTGGC TCGGGCTGGC AGCCGACCG AGCCGACCG CTGTACTGC TCTGTCTCAT GGTACTCTA CCCCCGTCC ACGGGTAGTT CACCTACCGC
          4301 CCATGTCAA ATTACAGACT TCGGGCTGGC TCGGGCTGGC AGCCGACCG AGCCGACCG CTGTACTGC TCTGTCTCAT GGTACTCTA CCCCCGTCC ACGGGTAGTT CACCTACCGC
          GGTACAGTTT TAATGTCTGA AGCCGACCG AGCCGACCG CTGTACTGC TCTGTCTCAT GGTACTCTA CCCCCGTCC ACGGGTAGTT CACCTACCGC
          858 H V K I T D F G L A R L L D I D E T E Y H A D G G K V P I K W M A

          bsrBI
          aciI
          fnu4HI/bsoFI
          haeIII/pali
          eaeI
          bsmFI cfrI  maeII
          pleI
          tail
          fnu4HI/bsoFI
          haeIII/pali
          eaeI
          bsmFI cfrI  maeII
          CGTCTGGAAC GTGCTGGTCA AGACTCCCAA
          GCGGACGCCCT GGGTCCCCAG GACCTGCTGA
          825 W C M Q I A K G M S Y L E D V R L V H R D L A A R N V L V K S P N

          bspI286
          bmyI
          nlaIV xcmI
          hgiCI pflMI
          bani  bsII
          foki hhaI/cfoI
          bstF5I
          GGGGCAAGG TGCCCATCAA GTGGATGGG
          CCCCCGTCC ACGGGTAGTT CACCTACCGC
          858 H V K I T D F G L A R L L D I D E T E Y H A D G G K V P I K W M A

```

FIG. 70


```

sau96I
sanDI
scrFI
mvaI nlaIV
ecorII
dsaV avaII
bstNi
bssKI
bsaJI
apyI asuI
haeIII/palI
mscI/balI
haeI ppuMI
haeI nlaIV haeI hhaI/cfoI
haeI nlaIV haeI
nlaIII eco0109I/draII haeI
aciI cfrI bsmFI afeI/eco47III bstF5I foki
CCGCATGGCC AGGACCCCC AGCGCTTTGT GGTCAATCCAG
GGCGTACCGG TCCCTGGGG TCCGGAACA CCAGTAGGTC
R M A R D P Q R F V V I Q
4601 ATGTTGGATG ATTGACTCTG AATGTCCGCC AAGATTCGG GAGTTGGTGT CTGAATTCTC CCGCATGGCC AGGACCCCC AGCGCTTTGT GGTCAATCCAG
TACAACCTAC TAACCTGAGAC TTACAGCCGG TTCTRAGGCC CTCAACCAACA GACTTAAGAG GCGTACCGG TCCCTGGGG TCCGGAACA CCAGTAGGTC
958 C W M I D S E C R P R F R E L V S E F S R M A R D P Q R F V V I Q

```

```

scrFI
mvaI
ecorII
dsaV
bstNI
bssKI
apyI
sexAI
sau96I
avaII
ppuMI
nlaIV
eco0109I/draII
bsmFI
nlaIII asuI
nlaIII asuI
TGGGGACCT
GGTGGATGCT
GAGGAGTATC
mnII
bstXI styI
bsrI bsaJI
bsrBI
aciI tspRI bpmI/gsuI
TCTACCGCTC ACTGCTGGAG GACGATGACA TGGGGACCT
AGATGGCGAG TGACGACCTC CTGCTACTGT ACCCCCTGGA CCACCTACGA CTCCTCATAG
mnII
bstXI styI
bsrI bsaJI
bsrBI
aciI tspRI bpmI/gsuI
TCTACCGCTC ACTGCTGGAG GACGATGACA TGGGGACCT
AGATGGCGAG TGACGACCTC CTGCTACTGT ACCCCCTGGA CCACCTACGA CTCCTCATAG
4701 AATGAGGACT TGGGGCCAGC CAGTCCCTTG GACAGCACCT TCTACCGCTC ACTGCTGGAG GACGATGACA TGGGGACCT
TTACTCTGA ACCCGGTCG GTCAGGGAC CTGCTGTTGA AGATGGCGAG TGACGACCTC CTGCTACTGT ACCCCCTGGA CCACCTACGA CTCCTCATAG
991 N E D L G P A S P L D S T F Y R S L L E D D M G D L V D A E E Y L

```

FIG. 7Q


```

sau96I
nlaIV
avaII
asuI
ppuMI
eco0109I/draII
scrFI
mvaI
ecoRII
dsav
bstNI
bssKI
apyI
bsrBI
bslI
aciI
banII
ACCGAGCC
ACCAGAGCGG
GGGGCTCCAC
GGGGCTCCCTT
CCAGCACCTT
CAAAGGGACA
CCTACGGGAG
AGAACCAGA
GTACCTGGGT
CTGCACGTGC
CAGTGTGAAC
TGGTCTGGG
TGGTCTGGCC
CCCCGAGGTG
GGTCGTGGAA
GTTTCCCTGT
GGATGGGTC
TCTTGGGTCT
CATGGACCCA
GACCTGCACG
GTCACACTTG
Q D P P E R G A P P S T F K G T P T A E N P E Y L G L D V P V O
191 V E N P E Y L T P Q G G A A P Q P H P P P A F S P A F D N L Y Y W D
201 GTGGAGAACC CCGAGTACTT GACACCCCGAG GGAGGAGGTG CCCCTCAGCC CCACCCCTCCT CCTGCCCTTCA GCCCAGCCCTT CGACAACTC TATTACTGGG
CACCTCTTGG GGCTCATGAA CTGTGGGGTC CCTCCTCGAC GGGGAGTCGG GTGGGAGGA GGACGGAGT CCGGTCCGAA GCTGTTGGAG ATAATGACCC
191 V E N P E Y L T P Q G G A A P Q P H P P P A F S P A F D N L Y Y W D
sau96I
nlaIV
avaII
asuI
ppuMI
eco0109I/draII
scrFI
mvaI
ecoRII
dsav
bstNI
bssKI
apyI
bsrBI
bslI
aciI
banII
ACCGAGCC
ACCAGAGCGG
GGGGCTCCAC
GGGGCTCCCTT
CCAGCACCTT
CAAAGGGACA
CCTACGGGAG
AGAACCAGA
GTACCTGGGT
CTGCACGTGC
CAGTGTGAAC
TGGTCTGGG
TGGTCTGGCC
CCCCGAGGTG
GGTCGTGGAA
GTTTCCCTGT
GGATGGGTC
TCTTGGGTCT
CATGGACCCA
GACCTGCACG
GTCACACTTG
Q D P P E R G A P P S T F K G T P T A E N P E Y L G L D V P V O

```

FIG. 7T

```

rmaI
maeI
styI
bsaJI
blnI
avrII
haeIII/pal
stuI
haeI
mnlI bfaI
TTTGGAGGCC
501 CAGAAAGCCA AGTCCGCAGA AGCCTGTATG TGTCTCTCAGG GAGCAGGGAA GCGGCCCTCT GAGCTATTCC AGAAGTAGTG AGGAGGCTTT TTTGGAGGCC
GTCTTCCGGT TCAGCGTCT TCGGACTAC ACAGAGTCC CTCGTCCCTT CCGCGGGAGA CTCGATAAGG TCTTCATCAC TCCTCGAAA AAACCTCCGG

```

```

sau96I
sau96I
pspOMI/bsp120I
nlaIV
hgiJII

```

```

thaI haeIII/palI
fnuDI/mvni
sacII/sstII
mspAI/nspBII
kspI bsp1286
dsaI bmyI
bsaJI asuI
fnu4HI/bsoFI
haeIII/palI
mcrI banII
eagI/smaIII/eclXI
eeeI cac8I
cfrI acil
bsiEI asuI
notI bstUI
fnu4HI/bsoFI

```

```

xhoI
smlI
pleI

```

```

taqI taqI
sali paeR7I
clai/bsp106 hinFI
aluI bspDI
hindIII taqI
accI avai
scaI xbaI bsrBI acil apaI
mnlI drdI
mnlI maeII
bsII
601 TAGGCTTTTG CAAAAGCTT ATCGATACCG TCGACTCGAG AGTACTTCTA GAGCGCCCGC GGGCCCATCG CCTCTGACAG CAACGCTCTAT GACCTCTAA
ATCCGAAAC GTTTTTCGAA TAGGTATGGC AGCTGAGCTC TCATGAAGAT CTCGCGGGCG CCCGGGTAGC GGAGACTGTC GTTGCAGATA CTGGAGATT
^start of BS insert of HER2 xba-hindIII
^end of human HER2 insert fromp BS at xhoI

```

```

mnlI
stuI
haeI
mnlI bfaI
TTTGGAGGCC
501 CAGAAAGCCA AGTCCGCAGA AGCCTGTATG TGTCTCTCAGG GAGCAGGGAA GCGGCCCTCT GAGCTATTCC AGAAGTAGTG AGGAGGCTTT TTTGGAGGCC
GTCTTCCGGT TCAGCGTCT TCGGACTAC ACAGAGTCC CTCGTCCCTT CCGCGGGAGA CTCGATAAGG TCTTCATCAC TCCTCGAAA AAACCTCCGG

```

FIG. 7U


```

bslI
sau96I
haeIII/palI
asuI
sau96I
pspOMI/bsp120I
nlaIV
hgiJII
bsp1286
bmyI
banII
asuI
nlaIV
mboII
bpuAI
mboII
bpuAI
nlaIV
eco0109/draII
bbsI
101 GGGGCCCAAG TTGGGAAGAC AACCTGTAGG GCCTGGGGG TCTATTGGG AACCAAGCTG GAGTGCAGTG GCACAACTTT GGCTCACTGC AATCTCCGCC
CCCCGGTTC AACCCCTTCTG TTGGACATCC CGGACGCCCC AGATRAGCCC TTGGTTCGAC CTCACGTAC CGTGTTAGRA CCGAGTGACG TTAGAGGCGG
cac8I
haeIII/palI
sau96I
eco0109I/draII
scfI asuI aciI
nlaIV aluI tspRI
bpmI/gsuI mwoI bslI
mnlI
101 GGGGCCCAAG TTGGGAAGAC AACCTGTAGG GCCTGGGGG TCTATTGGG AACCAAGCTG GAGTGCAGTG GCACAACTTT GGCTCACTGC AATCTCCGCC
CCCCGGTTC AACCCCTTCTG TTGGACATCC CGGACGCCCC AGATRAGCCC TTGGTTCGAC CTCACGTAC CGTGTTAGRA CCGAGTGACG TTAGAGGCGG
sphi
nspHI
nspI
scrFI mvaI scrFI
mvaI mvaI ecorII
ecorII dsav
dsav nlaIII cellI/espI
bstNI ppulOI bstNI
bstNI nsII/avaIII blpI/bpul102I
bstNI apyI nlaIII bssKI aluI
tfII ddeI avaI
mnlI mnlI hinFI cac8I apyI ddeI tsp509I
bcgI
201 TCCTGGGTTT AAGCGATTCT CCTGCCCTCAG CCTCCCGAGT TGTTGGGATT CCAGGCATGC ATGACCAGGC TCAGCTAATT TTTGTTTTTT TGGTAGAGAC
AGGACCCCAAG TTCGCTAAGA GGACGGAGTC GGAGGGCTCA ACAACCCTAA GGTCCGTACG TACTGGTCCG AGTCGATTAA AAACAAAAAA ACCATCTCTG

```

FIG. 7X


```

scrFI      mmoI      fnuDII/mvnI
mvaI      thal      bstUI
ecorII    dsav      bstNI
bsSKI     bstNI     bssKI
nlaIII    bslI     cac8I     apyI     bslI     fnu4HI/bsOFI
nspHI     nspHI    haeIII/palI HaeIII/palI haeIII/palI
nspI     aflIII   haeI      nlaIV   haeIII/palI
aflIII   haeI     haeI      nlaIV   haeIII/palI
901 CGGTAATACG GTTATCCACA GAATCAGGGG ATAAAGCAGG AAAGACATG TGAGCAAAGG GCCAGAAA GGCAGGAGAC CGTAAAAGG CCGCGTTGCT
GCCATTATGC CAATAGGTGT CTTAGTCCC TAITGGGTCC TTTCTTGATC ACTCGTTTTC CGGTCTTTT CGGTCCTTTC GCATTTTCC GCGGCAACGA

```

```

scrFI      mvaI      ecorII    dsav      bstNI     bssKI     apyI
mvaI      ecorII    dsav      bstNI     bssKI     apyI
nlaIV     nlaIV    sfaNI     taqI     smlI     mnlI
CGCCCTCC CATAGCTCC GCCCCCTGA CGAGCATCAC AAAATCGAC GCTCAAGTCA GAGGTGGCGA AAACCGACAG GACTATAAAG ATACCAGGCG
CGGCAAAAAG GTATCCGAGG CCGGGGGACT GCTCGTAGTG TTTTATAGTG TTTTATAGTG CTCCACCGCT TTGGGCTGTC CTGATATTTT TATGGTCCGC

```

```

scrFI      mvaI      ecorII    dsav      bstNI     bssKI     apyI
mvaI      ecorII    dsav      bstNI     bssKI     apyI
bsaJI     aluI     mnlI     hhaI/cfoI
bsaJI     aluI     mnlI     hhaI/cfoI
101 TTTCCCTG GAAGTCCCT CGTGGCTCT CCTGTCCGA CCCTGGCTT TACGGATAC CTGTCCGCT TTTCCCTTC GGAAGCGTG GCGCTTTCTC
AAAGGGGAC CTTCCAGGGA GCACGGGAGA GGACAGGCT GGCACGGCGA ATGGCCTAIG GACAGGGCGA AAGAGGGAAG CCTTCCGAC CCGGAAAGAG

```

```

scrFI      ddeI
CTGTAGGTAT CTCAGTCCGG TGTAGTGGT TCCCTCBAAG CTGGCTGTG TGCACGAAAC CCCCCTTCAG CCCGACCGCT GCGCCTTATC
TTACGAGTGC GACATCCATA GATCAAGCC ACATCCAGCA AGCGAGGTTG GACCCGACAC ACGTGTGGT GGGCAAGTC GGGCTGGCGA CCGGGAATAG

```

FIG. 7AA

```

mspI      pleI      mspI      hinPI      sau3AI      mboI/nde
hpaII     hinfI     hpaII     thal      mboI/ndeII  dpnII
scrFI     cauII     hpaII     fnuDII/mvni  dpnII      dpnI
nciI      dsav      hpaII     fnu4HI/bsoFI hhai/cfoI  alwI
bskKi     cauII     bskKi     bsvI      bstUI      bstYI/xhoII bstYI/xhc
maeIII    smlI      smlI      bsrI      fnu4HI/bsoFI mwoI      alwI smlI mboII
CGGTAACAT CGTCTGAGT CCAACCCGGT AAGACACGAC TTATCGCCAC TGGCAGCAGC CACTGGTAAC AGGATPAGCA GAGCGAGGTA TGTAGGGCGT
GCCATTGATA GCAGAACTCA GGTGGGCCA TTCTGTGCTG AATAGCGGTG ACCGTCGTG GTGACCATG TCCTAATCGT CTGCTCCAT ACATCCGCCA
301

mspI      mspAII/nspBII  cac8I      mwoI      bsh1236I
hpaII     aciI      aciI      TTTGTTGCA AGCAGCAGAT TACGGCGAGA AAAAAAGGAT CTCAAGAAGA
sau3AI    CCGCTGGTAG CGGTGTTTT TTTGTTGCA AGCAGCAGAT TACGGCGAGA AAAAAAGGAT CTCAAGAAGA
mboI/ndeII ddeI      ddeI      GCGGACCATC GCCACCAAAA AAACAACAGT TCGTCGTCTA ATGCCGGTCT TTTTTTCCTA GAGTTCTTCT
501 TTGGTAGCTC TTGATCCGGC AAACAACCA CCGCTGGTAG CGGTGTTTT TTTGTTGCA AGCAGCAGAT TACGGCGAGA AAAAAAGGAT CTCAAGAAGA
AACCATCGAG AACTAGGCCG TTTGTTGGT GCGGACCATC GCCACCAAAA AAACAACAGT TCGTCGTCTA ATGCCGGTCT TTTTTTCCTA GAGTTCTTCT

sau3AI    sau3AI      mboI/ndeII  mboI/ndeII  dpnII      dpnI
mboI/ndeII ddeI      ddeI      hgeI      tspRI
dpnII     hgeI      tspRI      TTTTCTACCG GGTCTGACGC TCAGTGGAAAC GAAACTCAC GTTAAGGGAT TTTGGTCATG AGATTATCAA AAAGGATCTT CACCTAGATC
601 TCCTTTGATC TTTTCTACCG GGTCTGACGC TCAGTGGAAAC GAAACTCAC GTTAAGGGAT TTTGGTCATG AGATTATCAA AAAGGATCTT CACCTAGATC
AGGAAACTAG AAAAGATGCC CCAGACTGGG AGTCACCTTG CTTTGGATG CAATTCCTTA AAACCAGTAC TCTAATAGTT TTTCCCTAGAA GTGGATCTAG

```

FIG. 7BB

```

tru9I          nlaIV
tsp509I       hqiCI
tru9I         mnII
mseI msel    tru9I   msei   tspRI bani   ddeI
ahaIII/draI  ahaIII/draI  maeIII   maeIII   maeIII   maeIII   maeIII
701 CTTTAAATT AAAAATGAG TTTAAATCA ATCTRAAGTA TATATAGTA AACTTGTCT GACAGTTACC AATGTTAAT CAGTGAGCA CCTATCTCAG
GAAAATTAA TTTTACTTC AAAATTTAGT TAGATTTTAT ATATACTCAT TTGAACAGA CTGTCAAATGG TTACGAATTA GTCACCTCCG GTGATAGAGTC

sau3AI       bsrI tseI
mboI/ndeII  sau96I  fnu4HI/bsoFI
dpnII       nlaIV  bbvI
dpnI        foki  hinfI
          bstF5I  ahdI/eam1105I
801 CGATCTGCT ATTTCGTTCA TCCATAGTTG CCTGACTCCC CGTCGTGTAG ATAACATAGA TAGGGGAGGG CTTACCATCT GGCCCCAGTG CTGCAATGAT
GCTAGACAGA TAAAGCAAGT AGGTATCAAC GGACTGAGGG GCAGCACATC TATTGATGCT ATGCCCTCCC GAATGGTAGA CCGGGGTAC GAGTTACTA

bsmAI
bsaI
thai
fnuDI/mvni  mspi bpmI/gsuI
bstUI       hpaII
bsh1236I    cfr10I/bsrFI
aciI        hphi nlaIV
901 ACCGGAGAC CCAGGCTCAC CGGCTCCAGA TTTATACGA ATAAACCAGC CAGCCGGAAG GCGCGAGCGC AGAAGTGGTC CTGCAACTTT ATCCGCCTCC
TGGCGCTCTG GGTGGAGTG GCGGAGTCT AATAGTCTT TATTGGTCTG GTCGGCTTC CCGGCTCGGG TCTTACCAG GACGTTGAAA TAGGCGGAGG

scrFI
nciI
mspi
hpaII
tsp509I     dsav  rmaI
tru9I       cauII maeI
msei        bssKI bfaI
          aseI/asnI/vspi aluI
          bsrI
001 ATCCAGTCTA TTAATTGTTG CCGGAAGCT AGAGTAAGTA GTTCGCCAGT TAATAGTTG CGCAACGTTG mwoI bbvI sfaNI   tsp45I
TAGGTCAGAT AATTAACAC GGCCTTCGA TCTCATTAT CRAAGGGTCA ATTATCAAC GCGTTGCAAC AACGGTAACG ACGACCCTAG CACCACAGTG

```

FIG. 70C


```

scrFI
nciI
mspI
hpaII
dsav
    sfaNI
fokI  cauII
bstF5I
    aciI  bssKI  drdI
    hpaII  mspALI/nspBII
    hhaI/cfoI
aluI  TGTAAGCGGA  TGCCGGGAGC  AGACAAGCCC  GTCAGGGCGC  GTCAGGGGGT  GTTGGCGGGT  GTCGGGGCGC  AGCCATGACC  CAGTCACGTA
TGTCGACAG  ACATTGGCCT  ACGGCCCTCG  TCTGTTCGGG  CAGTCCCGCG  CAGTCGCCCA  CAACCGCCCA  CAGCCCCGGC  TCGGTACTGG  GTCAGTGCAT
    mwoI
    hinPI
    hgiAI/aspHI
    bsp1286
    bsiHKAI
    bmyI  ndeI
    apaLI/snoI
    alw4I/snoI  aciI  sfaNI
001  GCGATAGCGG  ACTTGGCTTA  ACTATGCGGC  ATCAGAGCAG  ATTGTACTGA  GAGTGCACCA  TATGCGGTGT  GAATACCGC  ACAGATGCGT  AAGGAGAAAA
CGCTATCGCC  TCAACCGAAT  TGATACGCCG  TAGTCTCGTC  TAACATGACT  CTCACGTGGT  AFACGCCACA  CTTTATGGCG  TGTCACGCA  TTCCCTCTTT
    mwoI
    hinPI
    hhaI/cfoI
    nlaIV
    nari
    kasI
    hinII/acyI
    hgiCI
    haeII
    sfaNI
    mwoI
    eheI
    eheI  eheI  mwoI
    mwoI  bglI
    aciI  ahaII/bsaHI
    TACCGCATCA  GCGGCATTC  GCCATTCAGG  CTACGCAACT  GTTGGGAAGG  GCGATCGGTG  CCGGCCTTCTT  CGCTATTACG  CCAGCTGGCG  AAGGGGGGT
    ATGGCGTAGT  CCGCGGTAAG  CGGTAAGTCC  GATGGGTTGA  CAACCCCTCC  CGCTAGCCAC  GCCCGAGAAA  CGGATTAATGC  GGTCGACGCC  TTCCCCCCTA
    mwoI
    bstAPI
    hgiAI/aspHI
    bsp1286
    bsiHKAI
    bmyI  ndeI
    apaLI/snoI
    alw4I/snoI  aciI  sfaNI
    GAGTGCACCA  TATGCGGTGT  GAATACCGC  ACAGATGCGT  AAGGAGAAAA
    CTCACGTGGT  AFACGCCACA  CTTTATGGCG  TGTCACGCA  TTCCCTCTTT
    sau3AI
    mboI/ndeII
    dpnII
    dpnI  haeIII/palI  cac8I
    pvuI/bspCI  sau96I  aluI
    mcrI  asuI  mboII  pvuII
    bsiEI  cac8I  earI/ksp632I  mspALI/nspBII  fokI
    mwoI  aciI  mnlI  cac8I  bstF5I
101  TACCGCATCA  GCGGCATTC  GCCATTCAGG  CTACGCAACT  GTTGGGAAGG  GCGATCGGTG  CCGGCCTTCTT  CGCTATTACG  CCAGCTGGCG  AAGGGGGGT
    ATGGCGTAGT  CCGCGGTAAG  CGGTAAGTCC  GATGGGTTGA  CAACCCCTCC  CGCTAGCCAC  GCCCGAGAAA  CGGATTAATGC  GGTCGACGCC  TTCCCCCCTA

```

FIG. 7FF

```

scrFI
mvaI
ecorII
dsaV
bstNI
bssKI
bsaJI
apyI
tseI
fnu4HI/bsoFI tru9I
bbvI
mseI
maeIII
maeIII
tgggtaacgc cagggttttc
caccgacgttc cgctaattca acccattgct gtcccaaaag
ggtcagtgct gcaaacatttt gctgccggtc acgg
tspRI
bsrI
haeIII/palI
eaeI
cfrI
tail
tsp45I
maeIII
bsrI
maeII
bsrI
maeII
ccagtcacga cgttgtaaaa cgacggcccag tgcc
ggtcagtgct gcaaacatttt gctgccggtc acgg

```

201

FIG. 7GG

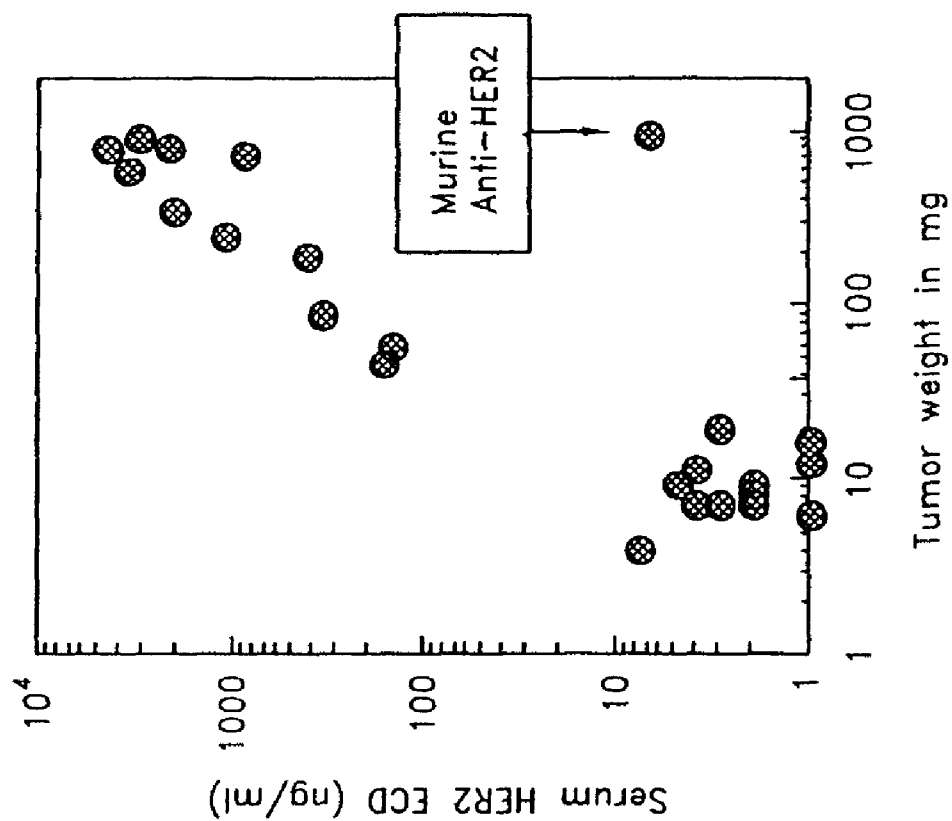


FIG. 8B

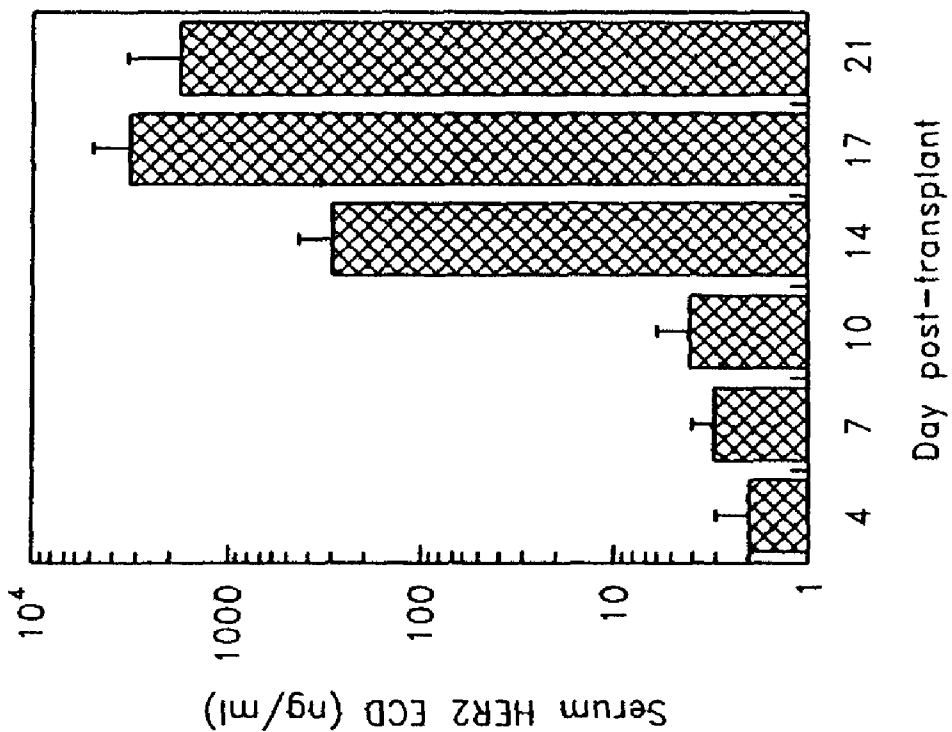


FIG. 8A

2 Cycles HERCEPTIN®-Maytansinoid
mm TV-Her2 Founder #5
Mammary Tumor Transplants in FVB

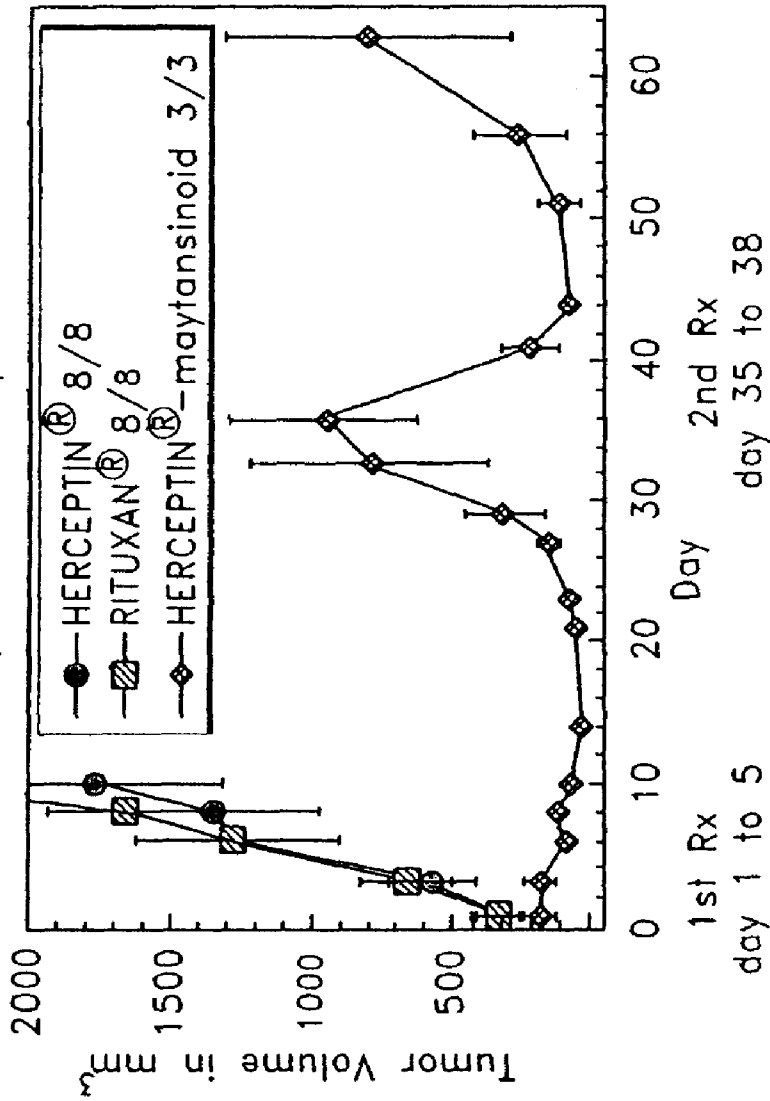


FIG. 9

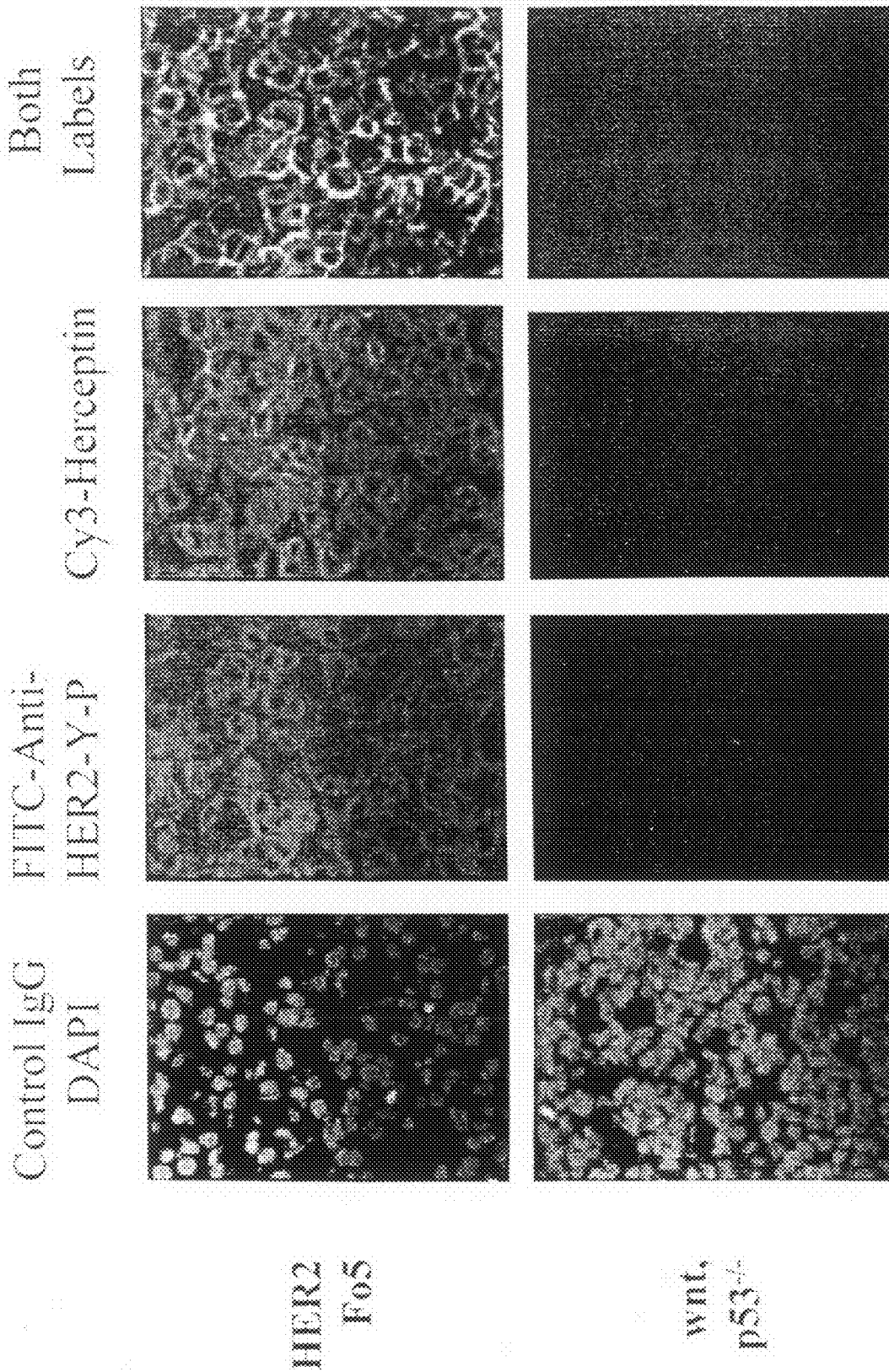


FIG. 10

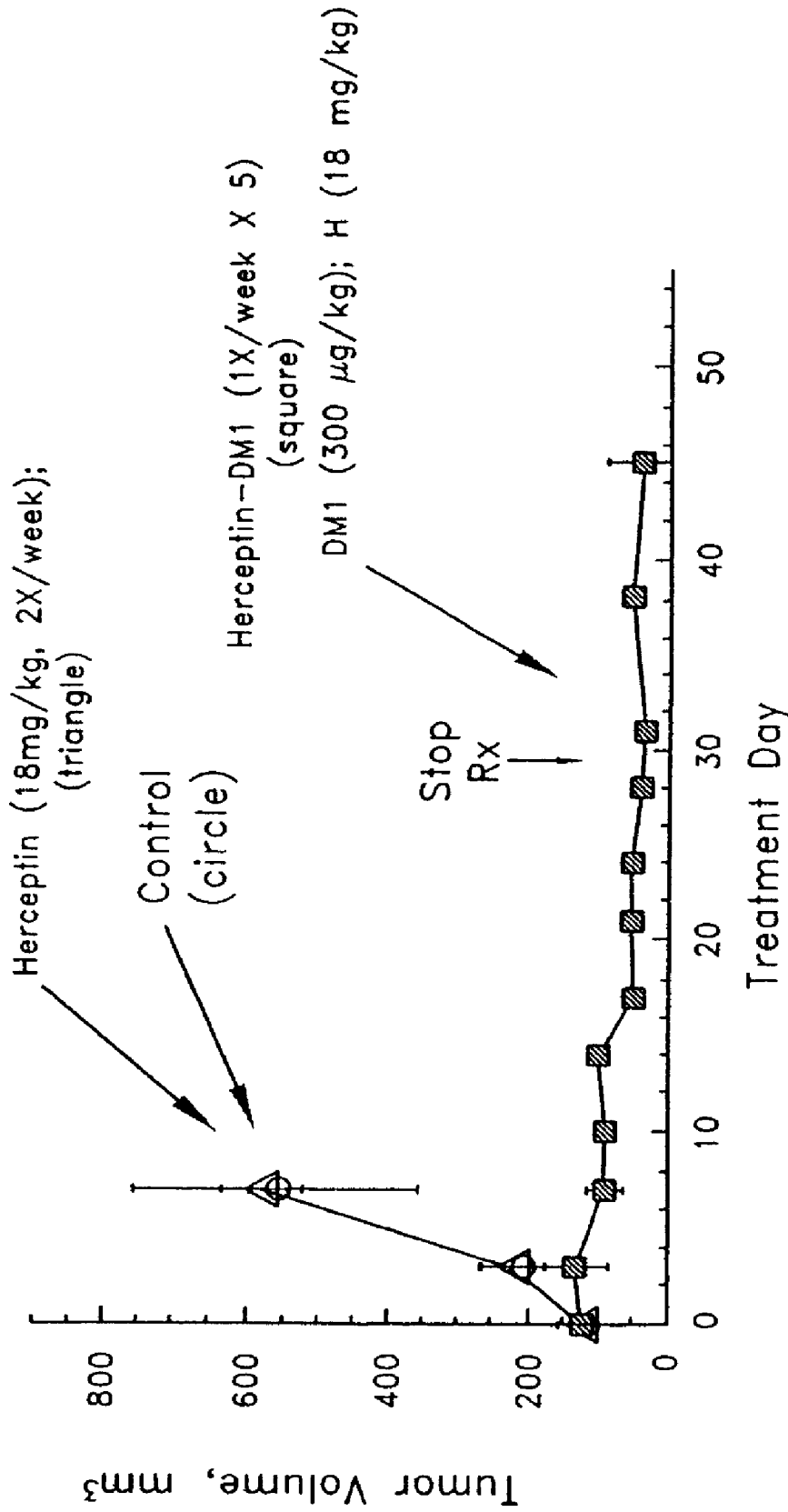


FIG. 11

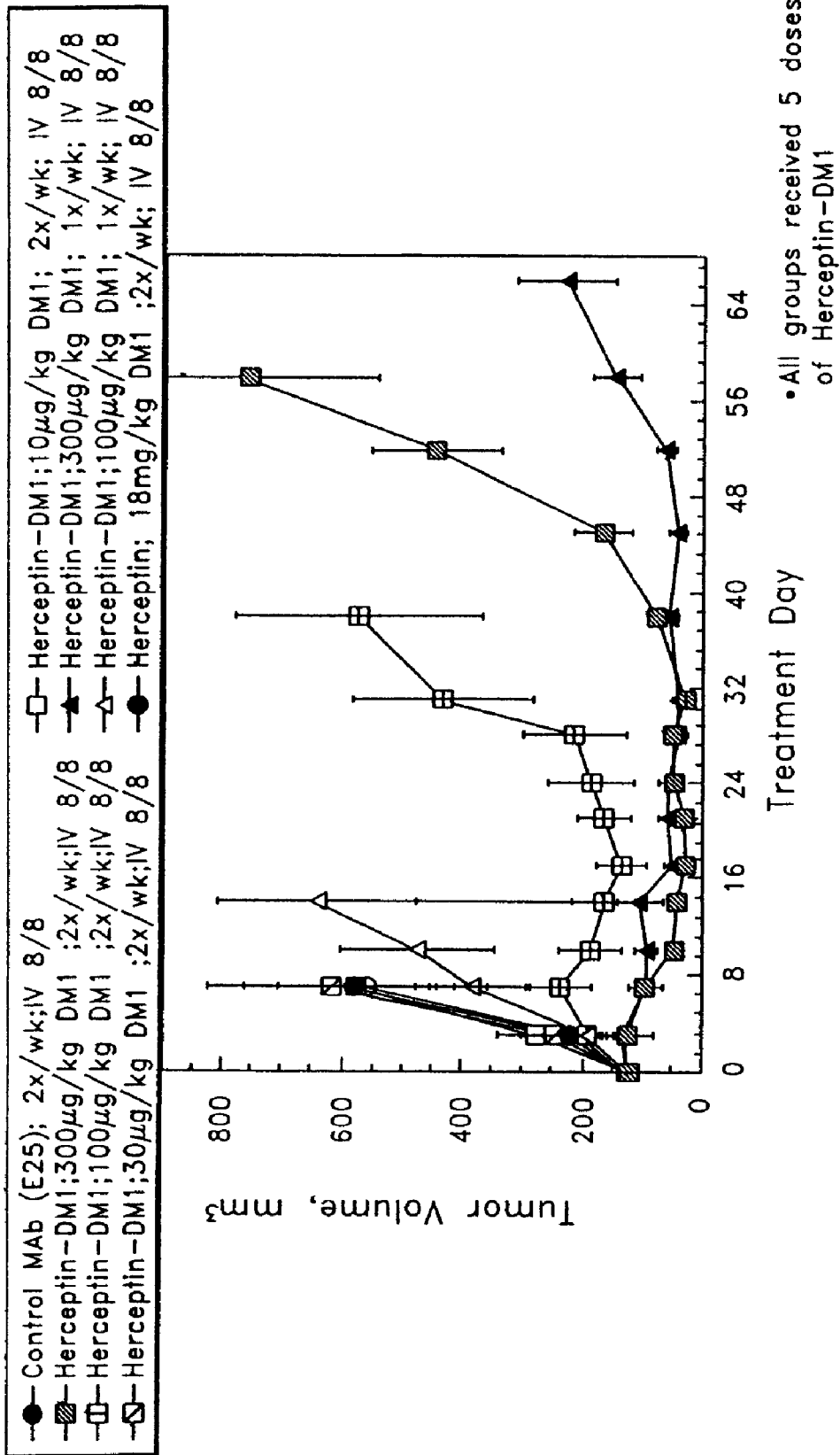


FIG. 12

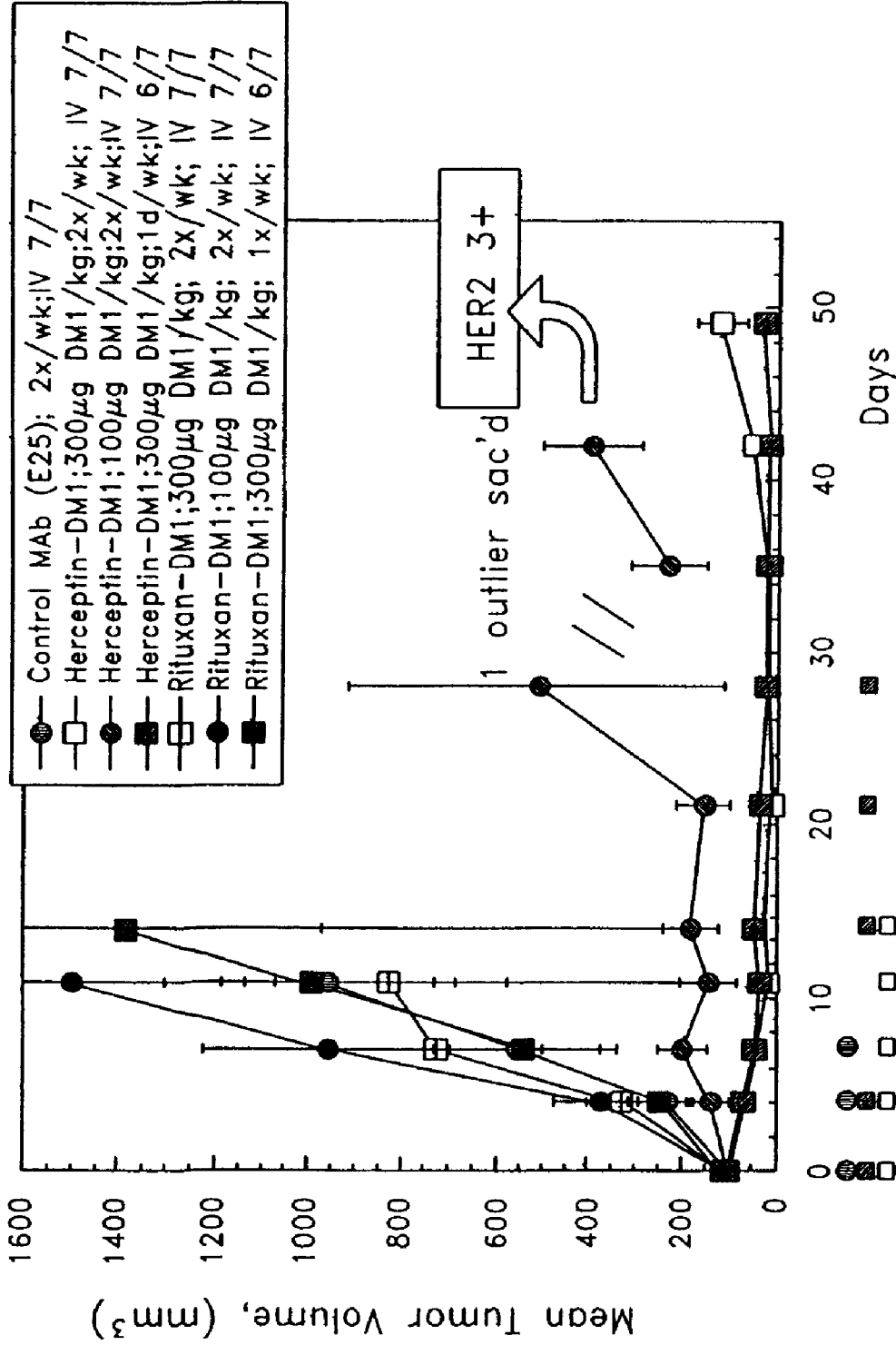


FIG. 13

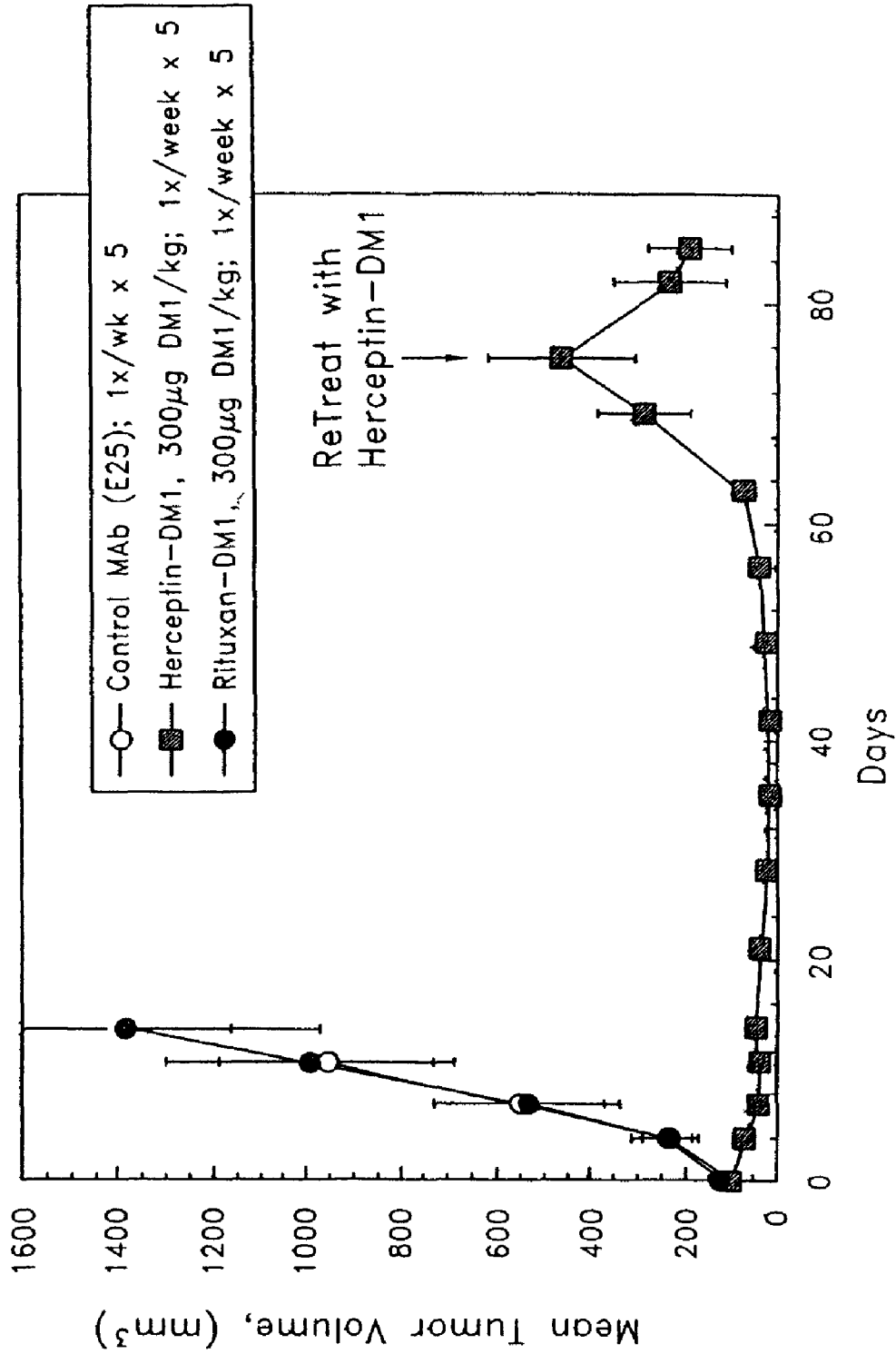


FIG. 14

**METHODS OF TREATMENT USING
ANTI-ERBB ANTIBODY-MAYTANSINOID
CONJUGATES**

**CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED
APPLICATIONS**

This application is a divisional application of U.S. Ser. No. 11/488,545, filed Jul. 7, 2006 now U.S. Pat. No. 7,575,748 which is a continuation application of U.S. Ser. No. 09/811,123 filed Mar. 16, 2001 now U.S. Pat. No. 7,097,840 which application claims priority to U.S. Provisional Application Nos. 60/238,327, filed Oct. 5, 2000, 60/189,844 filed Mar. 16, 2000, and 60/327,563 filed Jun. 23, 2000 (converted from U.S. Application No. 09/602,530) under 35 USC §119(e).

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

1. Field of the Invention

The present invention concerns methods of treatment, especially ErbB receptor-directed cancer therapies, using anti-ErbB receptor antibody-maytansinoid conjugates, and articles of manufacture suitable for use in such methods.

2. Description of the Related Art

1. Maytansine and Maytansinoids

Maytansine was first isolated from the east African shrub *Maytemis serrata* (U.S. Pat. No. 3,896,111). Subsequently, it was discovered that certain microbes also produce maytansinoids, such as maytansinol and C-3 maytansinol esters (U.S. Pat. No. 4,151,042). Synthetic maytansinol and maytansinol analogues are disclosed, for example, in U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,137,230; 4,248,870; 4,256,746; 4,260,608; 4,265,814; 4,294,757; 4,307,016; 4,308,268; 4,308,269; 4,309,428; 4,313,946; 4,315,929; 4,317,821; 4,322,348; 4,331,598; 4,361,650; 4,364,866; 4,424,219; 4,450,254; 4,362,663; and 4,371,533, the disclosures of which are hereby expressly incorporated by reference.

Maytansine and maytansinoids are highly cytotoxic but their clinical use in cancer therapy has been greatly limited by their severe systemic side-effects primarily attributed to their poor selectivity for tumors. Clinical trials with maytansine had been discontinued due to serious adverse effects on the central nervous system and gastrointestinal system (Issel et al., *Can. Trtmnt. Rev.* 5:199-207 [1978]).

2. The ErbB Family of Receptor Tyrosine Kinases and anti-ErbB Antibodies

Members of the ErbB family of receptor tyrosine kinases are important mediators of cell growth, differentiation and survival. The receptor family includes four distinct members, including epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR or ErbB1), HER2 (ErbB2 or p185^{neu}), HER3 (ErbB3) and HER4 (ErbB4 or tyro2).

p185^{neu}, was originally identified as the product of the transforming gene from neuroblastomas of chemically treated rats. The activated form of the neu proto-oncogene results from a point mutation (valine to glutamic acid) in the transmembrane region of the encoded protein. Amplification of the human homologue of neu is observed in breast and ovarian cancers and correlates with a poor prognosis (Slamon et al., *Science*, 235:177-182 (1987); Slamon et al., *Science*, 244:707-712 (1989); and U.S. Pat. No. 4,968,603). To date, no point mutation analogous to that in the neu proto-oncogene has been reported for human tumors. Overexpression of ErbB2 (frequently but not uniformly due to gene amplification) has also been observed in other carcinomas including carcinomas of the stomach, endometrium, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreas and bladder. See,

among others, King et al., *Science*, 229:974 (1985); Yokota et al., *Lancet*: 1:765-767 (1986); Fukushima et al., *Mol Cell Biol.*, 6:955-958 (1986); Geurin et al., *Oncogene Res.*, 3:21-31 (1988); Cohen et al., *Oncogene*, 4:81-88 (1989); Yonemura et al., *Cancer Res.*, 51:1034 (1991); Borst et al., *Gynecol. Oncol.*, 38:364 (1990); Weiner et al., *Cancer Res.*, 50:421-425 (1990); Kern et al., *Cancer Res.*, 50:5184 (1990); Park et al., *Cancer Res.*, 49:6605 (1989); Zhau et al., *Mol. Carcinog.*, 3:354-357 (1990); Aasland et al. *Br. J. Cancer* 57:358-363 (1988); Williams et al. *Pathobiology* 59:46-52 (1991); and McCann et al., *Cancer*, 65:88-92 (1990). ErbB2 may be overexpressed in prostate cancer (Gu et al. *Cancer Lett.* 99:185-9 (1996); Ross et al. *Hum. Pathol.* 28:827-33 (1997); Ross et al. *Cancer* 79:2162-70 (1997); and Sadasivan et al. *J. Urol.* 150:126-31 (1993)).

A spliced form of erbB2 oncogene encoding a constitutively tyrosine phosphorylated ErbB2 receptor is disclosed in PCT publication WO 00/20579, published on Apr. 13, 2000. The erbB2 protein encoded by the splice variant has an in frame deletion of 16 amino acids (CVDLDDKGCPAEQRAS (SEQ ID NO: 11)), two of which are conserved cysteine residues.

Antibodies directed against the rat p185^{neu} and human ErbB2 protein products have been described. Drebin and colleagues have raised antibodies against the rat neu gene product, p185^{neu}. See, for example, Drebin et al., *Cell* 41:695-706 (1985); Myers et al., *Meth. Enzym.* 198:277-290 (1991); and WO94/22478. Drebin et al. *Oncogene* 2:273-277 (1988) report that mixtures of antibodies reactive with two distinct regions of p185^{neu} result in synergistic anti-tumor effects on neu-transformed NIH-3T3 cells implanted into nude mice. See also U.S. Pat. No. 5,824,311 issued Oct. 20, 1998.

Other anti-ErbB2 antibodies with various properties have been described in Tagliabue et al. *Int. J. Cancer* 47:933-937 (1991); McKenzie et al. *Oncogene* 4:543-548 (1989); Maier et al. *Cancer Res.* 51:5361-5369 (1991); Bacus et al. *Molecular Carcinogenesis* 3:350-362 (1990); Stancovski et al. *PNAS (USA)* 88:8691-8695 (1991); Bacus et al. *Cancer Research* 52:2580-2589 (1992); Xu et al. *Int. J. Cancer* 53:401-408 (1993); WO94/00136; Kasprzyk et al. *Cancer Research* 52:2771-2776 (1992); Hancock et al. *Cancer Res.* 51:4575-4580 (1991); Shawver et al. *Cancer Res.* 54:1367-1373 (1994); Arteaga et al. *Cancer Res.* 54:3758-3765 (1994); Harwerth et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:15160-15167 (1992); U.S. Pat. No. 5,783,186; and Klapper et al. *Oncogene* 14:2099-2109 (1997).

Hudziak et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 9(3): 1165-1172 (1989) describe the generation of a panel of anti-ErbB2 antibodies which were characterized using the human breast tumor cell line SK-BR-3. Relative cell proliferation of the SK-BR-3 cells following exposure to the antibodies was determined by crystal violet staining of the monolayers after 72 hours. Using this assay, maximum inhibition was obtained with the antibody called 4D5 which inhibited cellular proliferation by 56%. Other antibodies in the panel reduced cellular proliferation to a lesser extent in this assay. The antibody 4D5 was further found to sensitize ErbB2-overexpressing breast tumor cell lines to the cytotoxic effects of TNF- α . See also U.S. Pat. No. 5,677,171 issued Oct. 14, 1997. The anti-ErbB2 antibodies discussed in Hudziak et al. are further characterized in Fendly et al. *Cancer Research* 50:1550-1558 (1990); Kotts et al. *In Vitro* 26(3):59A (1990); Sarup et al. *Growth Regulation* 1:72-82 (1991); Shepard et al. *J. Clin. Immunol.* 11(3):117-127 (1991); Kumar et al. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 11(2):979-986 (1991); Lewis et al. *Cancer Immunol. Immunother.* 37:255-263 (1993); Pietras et al. *Oncogene* 9:1829-1838 (1994); Vitetta et al. *Cancer Research* 54:5301-5309 (1994); Sli-

wkowski et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 269(20): 14661-14665 (1994); Scott et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 266:14300-5 (1991); D'souza et al. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 91:7202-7206 (1994); Lewis et al. *Cancer Research* 56:1457-1465 (1996); and Schaefer et al. *Oncogene* 15:1385-1394 (1997).

The murine monoclonal anti-HER2 antibody inhibits the growth of breast cancer cell lines that overexpress HER2 at the 2+ and 3+ level, but has no activity on cells that express lower levels of HER2 (Lewis et al., *Cancer Immunol. Immunother.* [1993]). Based on this observation, antibody 4D5 was humanized (Carter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89: 4285-4289 [1992]). The humanized version designated HERCEPTIN® (huMAb4D5-8, rhuMAb HER2, U.S. Pat. No. 5,821,337) was tested in breast cancer patients whose tumors overexpress HER2 but who had progressed after conventional chemotherapy (Baselga et al., *J. Clin. Oncol.* 14:737-744 [1996]); Cobleigh et al., *J. Clin. Oncol.* 17: 2639-2648 [1999]). Most patients in this trial expressed HER2 at the 3+ level, though a fraction was 2+ tumors. Remarkably, HERCEPTIN® induced clinical responses in 15% of patients (complete responses in 4% of patients, and partial responses in 11%) and the median duration of those responses was 9.1 months. HERCEPTIN® received marketing approval from the Food and Drug Administration Sep. 25, 1998 for the treatment of patients with metastatic breast cancer whose tumors overexpress the ErbB2 protein.

Homology screening has resulted in the identification of two other ErbB receptor family members; ErbB3 (U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,183,884 and 5,480,968 as well as Kraus et al. *PNAS (USA)* 86:9193-9197 (1989)) and ErbB4 (EP Pat Appln No 599,274; Plowman et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 90:1746-1750 (1993); and Plowman et al., *Nature*, 366:473-475 (1993)). Both of these receptors display increased expression on at least some breast cancer cell lines.

3. Maytansinoid-Antibody Conjugates

In an attempt to improve their therapeutic index, maytansine and maytansinoids have been conjugated to antibodies specifically binding to tumor cell antigens. Immunoconjugates containing maytansinoids are disclosed, for example, in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,208,020; 5,416,064 and European Patent EP 0 425 235 B1, the disclosures of which are hereby expressly incorporated by reference. Liu et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 93:8618-8623 (1996) described immunoconjugates comprising a maytansinoid designated DM1 linked to the monoclonal antibody C242 directed against human colorectal cancer. The conjugate was found to be highly cytotoxic towards cultured colon cancer cells, and showed anti-tumor activity in an in vivo tumor growth assay. Chari et al. *Cancer Research* 52:127-131 (1992) describe immunoconjugates in which a maytansinoid was conjugated via a disulfide linker to the murine antibody A7 binding to an antigen on human colon cancer cell lines, or to another murine monoclonal antibody TA.1 that binds the HER-2/neu oncogene. The cytotoxicity of the TA.1-maytansinoid conjugate was tested in vitro on the human breast cancer cell line SK-BR-3, which expresses 3×10^5 HER-2 surface antigens per cell. The drug conjugate achieved a degree of cytotoxicity similar to the free maytansinoid drug, which could be increased by increasing the number of maytansinoid molecules per antibody molecule. The A7-maytansinoid conjugate showed low systemic cytotoxicity in mice.

Although HERCEPTIN® is a breakthrough in treating patients with ErbB2-overexpressing breast cancers that have received extensive prior anti-cancer therapy, generally approximately 85% of the patients in this population fail to respond, or respond only poorly, to HERCEPTIN® treatment, and in the clinical trial preceding marketing approval,

the median time to disease progression in all treated patients was only 3.1 months. Therefore, there is a significant clinical need for developing further HER2-directed cancer therapies for those patients with HER2-overexpressing tumors or other diseases associated with HER2 expression that do not respond, or respond poorly, to HERCEPTIN® treatment.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is based on the unexpected experimental finding that HERCEPTIN®-maytansinoid conjugates are highly effective in the treatment of HER2 (ErbB2) overexpressing tumors that do not respond, or respond poorly, to HERCEPTIN® therapy. The anti-ErbB2-maytansinoid conjugates of the present invention are expected to have superior clinical activity compared to treatment with HERCEPTIN® alone, including a better objective response rate and/or longer duration of response and/or increased survival.

In one aspect, the present invention concerns a method for the treatment of a tumor in a mammal, wherein the tumor is characterized by the overexpression of an ErbB receptor and does not respond or responds poorly to treatment with a monoclonal anti-ErbB antibody, comprising administering to the mammal a therapeutically effective amount of a conjugate of the anti-ErbB antibody with a maytansinoid.

In a preferred embodiment, the patient is human. In another preferred embodiment, the ErbB receptor is (human) ErbB2 (HER2). The method is not limited by the mechanism of action of the anti-ErbB antibody used. Thus, the anti-ErbB antibody may, for example, have growth inhibitory properties and/or may induce cell death and/or apoptosis. In a particularly preferred embodiment, the method concerns the treatment of cancer including, without limitation, breast, ovarian, stomach, endometrial, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, colorectal, thyroid, pancreatic, prostate and bladder cancer. Preferably the cancer is breast cancer, in particular, breast cancer which overexpresses ErbB2 at a 2+ level or above, more preferably at a 3+ level. A preferred group of antibodies has a biological characteristic of a 4D5 monoclonal antibody, or binds essentially the same epitope as a 4D5 monoclonal antibody, a humanized form of the murine monoclonal antibody 4D5 (ATCC CRL 10463) being particularly preferred.

The maytansinoid used in the conjugates of the present invention may be maytansine or, preferably, maytansinol or a maytansinol ester. The antibody and maytansinoid may be conjugated by a bispecific chemical linker, such as N-succinimidyl-4-(2-pyridylthio)propanoate (SPDP) or N-succinimidyl-4-(2-pyridylthio)pentanoate (SPP). The linking group between the antibody and the maytansinoid may, for example, be a disulfide, thioether, acid labile, photolabile, peptidase labile, or esterase labile group.

In another aspect, the invention concerns an article of manufacture comprising a container and a composition contained therein, wherein the composition comprises an anti-ErbB antibody-maytansinoid conjugate, and further comprising a package insert or label indicating that the composition can be used to treat cancer characterized by overexpression of an ErbB receptor, preferably at a 2+ level or above.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 shows the heavy chain variable region sequence of a humanized anti-HER2 antibody 2C4 (SEQ ID NO: 1) aligned with the heavy chain variable region sequences of antibody 574 (SEQ ID NO: 2) and the human subgroup V_HIII upon which the humanized sequences are based (SEQ ID NO: 3).

5

FIG. 2 shows the light chain variable region sequence of a humanized anti-HER2 antibody 2C4 (SEQ ID NO: 4) aligned with the light chain variable region sequences of antibody 574 (SEQ ID NO: 5) and the sequence of the human subgroup upon which the humanized sequences are based (SEQ ID NO: 6).

FIG. 3 shows the structure of the maytansinoid, designated "DM1." In the structure of DM1, "R" can be occupied by a variety of groups capable of forming a chemical bond with a selected linker. Preferably, "R" is an SH group or a protected derivative thereof, which forms an S—S bond with a linker, such as N-succinimidyl-4-(2-pyridylthio)pentanoate (SPP).

FIG. 4 illustrates the structure of a HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate.

FIG. 5 is the elution profile of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate on a Sephacryl S300 gel filtration column.

FIG. 6 shows the anti-proliferative effect of HERCEPTIN® and HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate on SK-BR3 cells in vitro. As control, the unrelated monoclonal antibody RITUXAN® or RITUXAN®-DM1 conjugate was used.

FIG. 7A-GG shows the nucleotide sequence of a HER2 transgene plasmid construct (SEQ ID NO: 7) directing the expression of native human HER2 (ErbB2) in the mammary gland of a transgenic mouse. The reverse strand is also depicted (SEQ ID NO: 10). The figure includes the nucleotide sequence of HER2 (ErbB2) cDNA insert (SEQ ID NO: 8) as well as the deduced amino acid sequence of HER2 (ErbB2) (SEQ ID NO: 9), including the signal sequence. Within SEQ ID NO: 9, residues from about 22 to about 645, inclusive represent the HER2 (ErbB2) extracellular domain.

FIGS. 8A and B show that the amount of HER2 extracellular domain (ECD) shed into serum increases following transplant (FIG. 8A) and is proportional to the weight of the resulting tumor (FIG. 8B).

FIG. 9 illustrates the effect of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 on HER2-transgenic tumors. Two mm³ pieces of MMTV-HER2-transgenic tumors were transplanted into the mammary fat pad of FVB mice. When tumors reached 250 mm³, groups of 8 mice were injected i.v. on 5 consecutive days with a HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate. Two other groups of mice were treated IP twice per week with 10 mg/kg of either HERCEPTIN® or RITUXAN®.

FIG. 10 shows that tumor cells originating from Founder 5 show binding to cy3-HERCEPTIN® and to an anti-tyrosine-phosphorylated-HER2 antibody. Antibodies were injected intravenously into transgenic mice and the next day tumors were collected and sectioned. Antibody binding was visualized by fluorescence microscopy.

FIG. 11 shows the effect of HERCEPTIN® and HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate on the growth of HER2 transgenic tumor transplant. HERCEPTIN®-DM1 was administered once a week for 5 weeks at 300 µg DM1/kg or 18 mg/kg of HERCEPTIN®. HERCEPTIN® or a control mAb (RITUXAN®) was administered twice a week at 18 mg/kg.

FIG. 12 shows evaluation of doses and schedule of treatment with HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate in HER2 transgenic tumor transplant in nude mice. HERCEPTIN® -DM1 conjugate was administered either twice a week at various doses (300, 100, 30 or 10 µg DM1/kg) or once a week at various doses (300 or 100 µg DM1/kg) for 5 weeks. HERCEPTIN® or a control mAb E25 (RITUXAN®) was administered twice a week at 18 mg/kg.

FIG. 13 shows the effect of different HERCEPTIN®-DM1 dosing regimens on HER2-transgenic tumors compared to matching doses of RITUXAN®-DM1. Mice with 100 mm³ tumors were injected i.v. with HERCEPTIN®-DM1 or RIT-

6

UXAN®-DM1 at doses of 100 or 300 µg DM1/kg twice a week or 300 µg DM1/kg once a week. All animals received 5 doses.

FIG. 14 is a comparison of the most effective observed dose of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 and RITUXAN®-DM1. A second dose of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 following the beginning of tumor regrowth was effective in shrinking the tumors again.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

1. Definitions

Unless defined otherwise, technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning as commonly understood by one of ordinary skill in the art to which this invention belongs. Singleton et al., *Dictionary of Microbiology and Molecular Biology 2nd ed.*, J. Wiley & Sons (New York, N.Y. 1994). One skilled in the art will recognize many methods and materials similar or equivalent to those described herein, which could be used in the practice of the present invention. Indeed, the present invention is in no way limited to the methods and materials described. For purposes of the present invention, the following terms are defined below.

An "ErbB receptor" or "ErbB" is a receptor protein tyrosine kinase which belongs to the ErbB receptor family and includes ErbB1 (EGFR), ErbB2 (HER2), ErbB3 (HER3) and ErbB4 (HER4) receptors and other members of this family to be identified in the future. The definition specifically includes ErbB receptors encoded by spliced forms of the corresponding erbB oncogenes, including, without limitation, the deletion variant of ErbB2 disclosed in PCT publication No. WO 00/20579 (published on Apr. 13, 2000). The ErbB receptor will generally comprise an extracellular domain, which may bind an ErbB ligand; a lipophilic transmembrane domain; a conserved intracellular tyrosine kinase domain; and a carboxyl-terminal signaling domain harboring several tyrosine residues which can be phosphorylated. The ErbB receptor may be a "native sequence" ErbB receptor or a functional derivative, such as an "amino acid sequence variant" thereof. Preferably the ErbB receptor is native sequence human ErbB receptor.

The terms "ErbB1", "epidermal growth factor receptor" and "EGFR" are used interchangeably herein and refer to native sequence EGFR as disclosed, for example, in Carpenter et al. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 56:881-914 (1987), including naturally occurring mutant forms thereof (e.g. a deletion mutant EGFR as in Humphrey et al. *PNAS (USA)* 87:4207-4211 (1990)), and its functional derivatives, such as amino acid sequence variants. erbB1 refers to the gene encoding the EGFR protein product.

The expressions "ErbB2" and "HER2" are used interchangeably herein and refer to native sequence human HER2 protein described, for example, in Semba et al., *PNAS (USA)* 82:6497-6501 (1985) and Yamamoto et al. *Nature* 319:230-234 (1986) (Genebank accession number X03363), and functional derivatives, such as amino acid sequence variants thereof. The term erbB2 refers to the gene encoding human HER2 and neu refers to the gene encoding rat p185^{neu}. Preferred HER2 is native sequence human HER2. Examples of antibodies which bind HER2 include MAbs 4D5 (ATCC CRL 10463), 2C4 (ATCC HB-12697), 7F3 (ATCC HB-12216), and 7C2 (ATCC HB 12215) (see, U.S. Pat. No. 5,772,997; WO98/77797; and U.S. Pat. No. 5,840,525, expressly incorporated herein by reference). Humanized anti-HER2 antibodies include huMAB4D5-1, huMAB4D5-2, huMAB4D5-3, huMAB4D5-4, huMAB4D5-5, huMAB4D5-6, huMAB4D5-7 and huMAB4D5-8 (HERCEPTIN®) as described in Table 3 of U.S. Pat. No. 5,821,337 expressly

incorporated herein by reference; humanized 520C9 (WO93/21319). Human anti-HER2 antibodies are described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,772,997 issued Jun. 30, 1998 and WO 97/00271 published Jan. 3, 1997.

"ErbB3" and "HER3" refer to the receptor polypeptide as disclosed, for example, in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,183,884 and 5,480,968 as well as Kraus et al. *PNAS (USA)* 86:9193-9197 (1989), and functional derivatives, including amino acid sequence variants thereof. Examples of antibodies which bind HER3 are described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,968,511 (Akita and Sliwkowski), e.g. the 8B8 antibody (ATCC HB 12070) or a humanized variant thereof.

The terms "ErbB4" and "HER4" herein refer to the receptor polypeptide as disclosed, for example, in EP Pat Appln No 599,274; Plowman et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 90:1746-1750 (1993); and Plowman et al., *Nature*, 366:473-475 (1993), and functional derivatives, including amino acid sequence variants thereof such as the HER4 isoforms disclosed in WO 99/19488.

A "native" or "native sequence" EGFR, HER2, HER3 or HER4 polypeptide may be isolated from nature, produced by techniques of recombinant DNA technology, chemically synthesized, or produced by any combinations of these or similar methods.

"Functional derivatives" include amino acid sequence variants, and covalent derivatives of the native polypeptides as long as they retain a qualitative biological activity of the corresponding native polypeptide. Amino acid sequence variants generally differ from a native sequence in the substitution, deletion and/or insertion of one or more amino acids anywhere within a native amino acid sequence. Deletional variants include fragments of the native polypeptides, and variants having N— and/or C-terminal truncations. Ordinarily, amino acid sequence variants will possess at least about 70% homology, preferably at least about 80%, more preferably at least about 90% homology with a native polypeptide.

"Homology" is defined as the percentage of residues in the amino acid sequence variant that are identical after aligning the sequences and introducing gaps, if necessary, to achieve the maximum percent homology. Methods and computer programs for the alignment are well known in the art. One such computer program is "Align 2", authored by Genentech, Inc., which was filed with user documentation in the United States Copyright Office, Washington, D.C. 20559, on Dec. 10, 1991.

By "ErbB ligand" is meant a polypeptide which binds to and/or activates an ErbB receptor. The ErbB ligand of particular interest herein is a native sequence human ErbB ligand such as Epidermal Growth Factor (EGF) (Savage et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 247:7612-7621 (1972)); Transforming Growth Factor alpha (TGF-alpha) (Marquardt et al., *Science* 223:1079-1082 (1984)); amphiregulin also known as schwannoma or keratinocyte autocrine growth factor (Shoyab et al. *Science* 243:1074-1076 (1989); Kimura et al. *Nature* 348:257-260 (1990); and Cook et al. *Mol. Cell Biol.* 11:2547-2557 (1991)); betacellulin (Shing et al., *Science* 259:1604-1607 (1993); and Sasada et al. *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 190:1173 (1993)); heparin-binding epidermal growth factor (HB-EGF) (Higashiyama et al., *Science* 251:936-939 (1991)); epiregulin (Toyoda et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 270:7495-7500 (1995); and Komurasaki et al. *Oncogene* 15:2841-2848 (1997)), a heregulin (see below); neuregulin-2 (NRG-2) (Carraway et al., *Nature* 387:512-516 (1997)); neuregulin-3 (NRG-3) (Zhang et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 94:9562-9567 (1997)); or cripto (CR-1) (Kannan et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 272(6):3330-3335 (1997)). ErbB ligands which bind EGFR include EGF, TGF-alpha, amphiregulin, betacellulin, HB-EGF and epiregulin.

ErbB ligands which bind HER3 include heregulins. ErbB ligands capable of binding HER4 include betacellulin, epiregulin, HB-EGF, NRG-2, NRG-3 and heregulins.

"Heregulin" (HRG) when used herein refers to a polypeptide which activates the ErbB2-ErbB3 and ErbB2-ErbB4 protein complexes (i.e. induces phosphorylation of tyrosine residues in the complex upon binding thereto). Various heregulin polypeptides encompassed by this term are disclosed in Holmes et al., *Science* 256:1205-1210 (1992); WO 92/20798; Wen et al., *Mol. Cell Biol.* 14(3):1909-1919 (1994) and Marchionni et al., *Nature* 362:312-318 (1993), for example. The term includes biologically active fragments and/or variants of a naturally occurring HRG polypeptide, such as an EGF-like domain fragment thereof (e.g. HRG $\beta_{177-244}$).

An "ErbB hetero-oligomer" herein is a noncovalently associated oligomer comprising at least two different ErbB receptors. Such complexes may form when a cell expressing two or more ErbB receptors is exposed to an ErbB ligand and can be isolated by immunoprecipitation and analyzed by SDS-PAGE as described in Sliwowski et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 269(20):14661-14665 (1994), for example. Examples of such ErbB hetero-oligomers include EGFR-HER2, HER2-HER3 and HER3-HER4 complexes. Moreover, the ErbB hetero-oligomer may comprise two or more HER2 receptors combined with a different ErbB receptor, such as HER3, HER4 or EGFR. Other proteins, such as a cytokine receptor subunit (e.g. gp130), may be included in the hetero-oligomer.

In the context of HER2 variants, such as HER2 fragments, the phrase "having the biological activity of a native human HER2" is used to refer to the qualitative ability of such fragments to induce tumor growth when overexpressed in an animal model (transgenic or non-transgenic) of the present invention.

"Tumor", as used herein, refers to all neoplastic cell growth and proliferation, whether malignant or benign, and all pre-cancerous and cancerous cells and tissues.

The terms "cancer" and "cancerous" refer to or describe the physiological condition in mammals that is typically characterized by unregulated cell growth. Examples of cancer include, but are not limited to, carcinoma, lymphoma, blastoma, sarcoma, and leukemia or lymphoid malignancies. More particular examples of such cancers include squamous cell cancer (e.g. epithelial squamous cell cancer), lung cancer including small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, adenocarcinoma of the lung and squamous carcinoma of the lung, cancer of the peritoneum, hepatocellular cancer, gastric or stomach cancer including gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, breast cancer, colon cancer, rectal cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial or uterine carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney or renal cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma, anal carcinoma, penile carcinoma, as well as head and neck cancer.

A cancer which "overexpresses" an ErbB receptor is one which has significantly higher levels of an ErbB receptor, such as HER2, at the cell surface thereof, compared to a noncancerous cell of the same tissue type. Such overexpression may be caused by gene amplification or by increased transcription or translation. ErbB receptor overexpression may be determined in a diagnostic or prognostic assay by evaluating increased levels of the ErbB protein present on the surface of a cell (e.g. via an immunohistochemistry assay; IHC). Alternatively, or additionally, one may measure levels of ErbB-encoding nucleic acid in the cell, e.g. via fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH; see WO98/45479 published October, 1998), Southern blotting, or polymerase chain reac-

tion (PCR) techniques, such as real time quantitative PCR (RT-PCR). One may also study ErbB receptor overexpression by measuring shed antigen (e.g., ErbB extracellular domain) in a biological fluid such as serum (see, e.g., U.S. Pat. No. 4,933,294 issued Jun. 12, 1990; WO91/05264 published Apr. 18, 1991; U.S. Pat. No. 5,401,638 issued Mar. 28, 1995; and Sias et al. *J. Immunol. Methods* 132: 73-80 (1990)). Aside from the above assays, various in vivo assays are available to the skilled practitioner. For example, one may expose cells within the body of the patient to an antibody which is optionally labeled with a detectable label, e.g. a radioactive isotope, and binding of the antibody to cells in the patient can be evaluated, e.g. by external scanning for radioactivity or by analyzing a biopsy taken from a patient previously exposed to the antibody.

The tumors overexpressing HER2 are rated by immunohistochemical scores corresponding to the number of copies of HER2 molecules expressed per cell, and can be determined biochemically: 0=0-10,000 copies/cell, 1+=at least about 200,000 copies/cell, 2+=at least about 500,000 copies/cell, 3+=at least about 2,000,000 copies/cell. Overexpression of HER2 at the 3+ level, which leads to ligand-independent activation of the tyrosine kinase (Hudziak et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84: 7159-7163 [1987]), occurs in approximately 30% of breast cancers, and in these patients, relapse-free survival and overall survival are diminished (Slamon et al., *Science* 244: 707-712 [1989]; Slamon et al., *Science* 235: 177-182 [1987]).

Conversely, a cancer which is "not characterized by overexpression of an ErbB receptor" is one which, in a diagnostic assay, does not express higher than normal levels of ErbB receptor compared to a noncancerous cell of the same tissue type.

A "hormone independent" cancer is one in which proliferation thereof is not dependent on the presence of a hormone which binds to a receptor expressed by cells in the cancer. Such cancers do not undergo clinical regression upon administration of pharmacological or surgical strategies that reduce the hormone concentration in or near the tumor. Examples of hormone independent cancers include androgen independent prostate cancer, estrogen independent breast cancer, endometrial cancer and ovarian cancer. Such cancers may begin as hormone dependent tumors and progress from a hormone-sensitive stage to a hormone-refractory tumor following anti-hormonal therapy.

The term "antibody" herein is used in the broadest sense and specifically covers intact monoclonal antibodies, polyclonal antibodies, multispecific antibodies (e.g. bispecific antibodies) formed from at least two intact antibodies, and antibody fragments, so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity.

The term "monoclonal antibody" as used herein refers to an antibody obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, i.e., the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical except for possible naturally occurring mutations that may be present in minor amounts. Monoclonal antibodies are highly specific, being directed against a single antigenic site. Furthermore, in contrast to polyclonal antibody preparations which include different antibodies directed against different determinants (epitopes), each monoclonal antibody is directed against a single determinant on the antigen. In addition to their specificity, the monoclonal antibodies are advantageous in that they may be synthesized uncontaminated by other antibodies. The modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as being obtained from a substantially homogeneous population of antibodies, and is not to be construed as

requiring production of the antibody by any particular method. For example, the monoclonal antibodies to be used in accordance with the present invention may be made by the hybridoma method first described by Kohler et al., *Nature*, 256:495 (1975), or may be made by recombinant DNA methods (see, e.g., U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567). The "monoclonal antibodies" may also be isolated from phage antibody libraries using the techniques described in Clackson et al., *Nature*, 352:624-628 (1991) and Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.*, 222:581-597 (1991), for example.

The monoclonal antibodies herein specifically include "chimeric" antibodies in which a portion of the heavy and/or light chain is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from a particular species or belonging to a particular antibody class or subclass, while the remainder of the chain(s) is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from another species or belonging to another antibody class or subclass, as well as fragments of such antibodies, so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567; and Morrison et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 81:6851-6855 (1984)). Chimeric antibodies of interest herein include primatized antibodies comprising variable domain antigen-binding sequences derived from a non-human primate (e.g. Old World Monkey, Ape etc) and human constant region sequences.

"Antibody fragments" comprise a portion of an intact antibody, preferably comprising the antigen-binding or variable region thereof. Examples of antibody fragments include Fab, Fab', F(ab')₂, and Fv fragments; diabodies; linear antibodies; single-chain antibody molecules; and multispecific antibodies formed from antibody fragment(s).

An "intact" antibody is one which comprises an antigen-binding variable region as well as a light chain constant domain (C_L) and heavy chain constant domains, C_H1, C_H2 and C_H3. The constant domains may be native sequence constant domains (e.g. human native sequence constant domains) or amino acid sequence variant thereof. Preferably, the intact antibody has one or more effector functions.

"Humanized" forms of non-human (e.g., rodent) antibodies are chimeric antibodies that contain minimal sequence derived from non-human immunoglobulin. For the most part, humanized antibodies are human immunoglobulins (recipient antibody) in which residues from a hypervariable region of the recipient are replaced by residues from a hypervariable region of a non-human species (donor antibody) such as mouse, rat, rabbit or nonhuman primate having the desired specificity, affinity, and capacity. In some instances, framework region (FR) residues of the human immunoglobulin are replaced by corresponding non-human residues. Furthermore, humanized antibodies may comprise residues that are not found in the recipient antibody or in the donor antibody. These modifications are made to further refine antibody performance. In general, the humanized antibody will comprise substantially all of at least one, and typically two, variable domains, in which all or substantially all of the hypervariable loops correspond to those of a non-human immunoglobulin and all or substantially all of the FRs are those of a human immunoglobulin sequence. The humanized antibody optionally also will comprise at least a portion of an immunoglobulin constant region (Fc), typically that of a human immunoglobulin. For further details, see Jones et al., *Nature* 321:522-525 (1986); Riechmann et al., *Nature* 332:323-329 (1988); and Presta, *Curr. Op. Struct. Biol.* 2:593-596 (1992).

Humanized anti-ErbB2 antibodies include huMAb4D5-1, huMAb4D5-2, huMAb4D5-3, huMAb4D5-4, huMAb4D5-5, huMAb4D5-6, huMAb4D5-7 and huMAb4D5-8 (HER-

CEPTIN®) as described in Table 3 of U.S. Pat. No. 5,821,337 expressly incorporated herein by reference; humanized 520C9 (WO93/21319) and humanized 2C4 antibodies. The heavy chain and light chain of humanized antibody 2C4 are shown in FIGS. 1 and 2, respectively.

Antibody “effector functions” refer to those biological activities attributable to the Fc region (a native sequence Fc region or amino acid sequence variant Fc region) of an antibody. Examples of antibody effector functions include C1q binding; complement dependent cytotoxicity; Fc receptor binding; antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC); phagocytosis; down regulation of cell surface receptors (e.g. B cell receptor; BCR), etc.

Depending on the amino acid sequence of the constant domain of their heavy chains, intact antibodies can be assigned to different “classes”. There are five major classes of intact antibodies: IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, and IgM, and several of these may be further divided into “subclasses” (isotypes), e.g., IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, IgG4, IgA, and IgA2. The heavy-chain constant domains that correspond to the different classes of antibodies are called α , δ , ϵ , γ , and μ , respectively. The subunit structures and three-dimensional configurations of different classes of immunoglobulins are well known.

“Antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity” and “ADCC” refer to a cell-mediated reaction in which non-specific cytotoxic cells that express Fc receptors (FcRs) (e.g. Natural Killer (NK) cells, neutrophils, and macrophages) recognize bound antibody on a target cell and subsequently cause lysis of the target cell. The primary cells for mediating ADCC, NK cells, express Fc γ RIII only, whereas monocytes express Fc γ RI, Fc γ RII and Fc γ RIII. FcR expression on hematopoietic cells in summarized is Table 3 on page 464 of Ravetch and Kinet, *Annu. Rev. Immunol* 9:457-92 (1991). To assess ADCC activity of a molecule of interest, an in vitro ADCC assay, such as that described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,500,362 or 5,821,337 may be performed. Useful effector cells for such assays include peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) and Natural Killer (NK) cells. Alternatively, or additionally, ADCC activity of the molecule of interest may be assessed in vivo, e.g., in an animal model such as that disclosed in Clynes et al. *PNAS (USA)* 95:652-656 (1998).

“Human effector cells” are leukocytes which express one or more FcRs and perform effector functions. Preferably, the cells express at least Fc γ RIII and perform ADCC effector function. Examples of human leukocytes which mediate ADCC include peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC), natural killer (NK) cells, monocytes, cytotoxic T cells and neutrophils; with PBMCs and NK cells being preferred. The effector cells may be isolated from a native source thereof, e.g. from blood or PBMCs as described herein.

The terms “Fc receptor” or “FcR” are used to describe a receptor that binds to the Fc region of an antibody. The preferred FcR is a native sequence human FcR. Moreover, a preferred FcR is one which binds an IgG antibody (a gamma receptor) and includes receptors of the Fc γ RI, Fc γ RII, and Fc γ RIII subclasses, including allelic variants and alternatively spliced forms of these receptors. Fc γ RII receptors include Fc γ RIIA (an “activating receptor”) and Fc γ RIIB (an “inhibiting receptor”), which have similar amino acid sequences that differ primarily in the cytoplasmic domains thereof. Activating receptor Fc γ RIIA contains an immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAM) in its cytoplasmic domain. Inhibiting receptor Fc γ RIIB contains an immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibition motif (ITIM) in its cytoplasmic domain. (see review M. in Daëron, *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* 15:203-234 (1997)). FcRs are reviewed in Ravetch and Kinet, *Annu. Rev. Immunol* 9:457-92 (1991); Capel et al.,

Immunomethods 4:25-34 (1994); and de Haas et al., *J. Lab. Clin. Med.* 126:330-41 (1995). Other FcRs, including those to be identified in the future, are encompassed by the term “FcR” herein. The term also includes the neonatal receptor, FcRn, which is responsible for the transfer of maternal IgGs to the fetus (Guyer et al., *J. Immunol.* 117:587 (1976) and Kim et al., *J. Immunol.* 24:249 (1994)).

“Complement dependent cytotoxicity” or “CDC” refers to the ability of a molecule to lyse a target in the presence of complement. The complement activation pathway is initiated by the binding of the first component of the complement system (C1q) to a molecule (e.g. an antibody) complexed with a cognate antigen. To assess complement activation, a CDC assay, e.g. as described in Gazzano-Santoro et al., *J. Immunol. Methods* 202:163 (1996), may be performed.

“Native antibodies” are usually heterotetrameric glycoproteins of about 150,000 daltons, composed of two identical light (L) chains and two identical heavy (H) chains. Each light chain is linked to a heavy chain by one covalent disulfide bond, while the number of disulfide linkages varies among the heavy chains of different immunoglobulin isotypes. Each heavy and light chain also has regularly spaced intrachain disulfide bridges. Each heavy chain has at one end a variable domain (V_H) followed by a number of constant domains. Each light chain has a variable domain at one end (V_L) and a constant domain at its other end. The constant domain of the light chain is aligned with the first constant domain of the heavy chain, and the light-chain variable domain is aligned with the variable domain of the heavy chain. Particular amino acid residues are believed to form an interface between the light chain and heavy chain variable domains.

The term “variable”, as used in connection with antibodies, refers to the fact that certain portions of the antibody variable domains differ extensively in sequence among antibodies and are used in the binding and specificity of each particular antibody for its particular antigen. However, the variability is not evenly distributed throughout the variable domains of antibodies. It is concentrated in three segments called hypervariable regions both in the light chain and the heavy chain variable domains. The more highly conserved portions of variable domains are called the framework regions (FRs). The variable domains of native heavy and light chains each comprise four FRs, largely adopting a β -sheet configuration, connected by three hypervariable regions, which form loops connecting, and in some cases forming part of, the β -sheet structure. The hypervariable regions in each chain are held together in close proximity by the FRs and, with the hypervariable regions from the other chain, contribute to the formation of the antigen-binding site of antibodies (see Kabat et al., *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest*, 5th Ed. Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md. (1991)). The constant domains are not involved directly in binding an antibody to an antigen, but exhibit various effector functions, such as participation of the antibody in antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC).

The term “hypervariable region” when used herein refers to the amino acid residues of an antibody which are responsible for antigen-binding. The hypervariable region generally comprises amino acid residues from a “complementarity determining region” or “CDR” (e.g. residues 24-34 (L1), 50-56 (L2) and 89-97 (L3) in the light chain variable domain and 31-35 (H1), 50-65 (H2) and 95-102 (H3) in the heavy chain variable domain; Kabat et al., *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest*, 5th Ed. Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md. (1991)) and/or those residues from a “hypervariable loop” (e.g. residues

26-32 (L1), 50-52 (L2) and 91-96 (L3) in the light chain variable domain and 26-32 (H1), 53-55 (H2) and 96-101 (H3) in the heavy chain variable domain; Chothia and Lesk *J. Mol. Biol.* 196:901-917 (1987)). "Framework Region" or "FR" residues are those variable domain residues other than the hypervariable region residues as herein defined.

An "isolated" antibody is one which has been identified and separated and/or recovered from a component of its natural environment. Contaminant components of its natural environment are materials which would interfere with diagnostic or therapeutic uses for the antibody, and may include enzymes, hormones, and other proteinaceous or nonproteinaceous solutes. In preferred embodiments, the antibody will be purified (1) to greater than 95% by weight of antibody as determined by the Lowry method, and most preferably more than 99% by weight, (2) to a degree sufficient to obtain at least 15 residues of N-terminal or internal amino acid sequence by use of a spinning cup sequenator, or (3) to homogeneity by SDS-PAGE under reducing or nonreducing conditions using Coomassie blue or, preferably, silver stain. Isolated antibody includes the antibody in situ within recombinant cells since at least one component of the antibody's natural environment will not be present. Ordinarily, however, isolated antibody will be prepared by at least one purification step.

An antibody "which binds" an antigen of interest, e.g. ErbB2 antigen, is one capable of binding that antigen with sufficient affinity such that the antibody is useful as a diagnostic and/or therapeutic agent in targeting a cell expressing the antigen and/or for targeted delivery of a cytotoxic or other chemotherapeutic agent, such as a maytansinoid. Where the antibody is one which binds ErbB2, it will usually preferentially bind ErbB2 as opposed to other ErbB receptors, and may be one which does not significantly cross-react with other proteins such as EGFR, ErbB3 or ErbB4. In such embodiments, the extent of binding of the antibody to these non-ErbB2 proteins (e.g., cell surface binding to endogenous receptor) will be less than 10% as determined by fluorescence activated cell sorting (FACS) analysis or radioimmunoprecipitation (RIA). Sometimes, the anti-ErbB2 antibody will not significantly cross-react with the rat neu protein, e.g., as described in Schecter et al. *Nature* 312:513 (1984) and Drebin et al., *Nature* 312:545-548 (1984).

Unless indicated otherwise, the expressions "monoclonal antibody 4D5", and "4D5 monoclonal antibody" refer to an antibody that has antigen binding residues of, or derived from, the murine 4D5 antibody. For example, the monoclonal antibody 4D5 may be murine monoclonal antibody 4D5 (ATCC CRL 10463) or a variant thereof, such as humanized antibody 4D5, possessing antigen binding amino acid residues of murine monoclonal antibody 4D5. Exemplary humanized 4D5 antibodies include huMAb4D5-1, huMAb4D5-2, huMAb4D5-3, huMAb4D5-4, huMAb4D5-5, huMAb4D5-6, huMAb4D5-7 and huMAb4D5-8 (HERCEPTIN®) as in U.S. Pat. No. 5,821,337, with huMAb4D5-8 (HERCEPTIN®) being a preferred humanized 4D5 antibody.

An antibody having a "biological characteristic" of a designated antibody, such as the monoclonal antibody designated 4D5, is one which possesses one or more of the biological characteristics of that antibody which distinguish it from other antibodies that bind to the same antigen (e.g. ErbB2). For example, an antibody with a biological characteristic of 4D5 may show growth inhibitory effect on ErbB2 overexpressing cells in a manner that is dependent on the ErbB2 expression level and/or bind the same epitope in the extracellular domain of ErbB2 as that bound by 4D5 (e.g. which blocks binding of monoclonal antibody 4D5 to ErbB2).

A "growth inhibitory agent" when used herein refers to a compound or composition which inhibits growth of a cell, especially an ErbB expressing cancer cell either in vitro or in vivo. Thus, the growth inhibitory agent may be one which significantly reduces the percentage of ErbB expressing cells in S phase. Examples of growth inhibitory agents include agents that block cell cycle progression (at a place other than S phase), such as agents that induce G1 arrest and M-phase arrest. Classical M-phase blockers include the vincas (vincristine and vinblastine), taxanes, and topo II inhibitors such as doxorubicin, epirubicin, daunorubicin, etoposide, and bleomycin. Those agents that arrest G1 also spill over into S-phase arrest, for example, DNA alkylating agents such as tamoxifen, prednisone, dacarbazine, mechlorethamine, cisplatin, methotrexate, 5-fluorouracil, and ara-C. Further information can be found in *The Molecular Basis of Cancer*, Mendelsohn and Israel, eds., Chapter 1, entitled "Cell cycle regulation, oncogenes, and antineoplastic drugs" by Murakami et al. (WB Saunders: Philadelphia, 1995), especially p. 13.

Examples of "growth inhibitory" antibodies are those which bind to ErbB2 and inhibit the growth of cancer cells overexpressing ErbB2. Preferred growth inhibitory anti-ErbB2 antibodies inhibit growth of SK-BR-3 breast tumor cells in cell culture by greater than 20%, and preferably greater than 50% (e.g. from about 50% to about 100%) at an antibody concentration of about 0.5 to 30 µg/ml, where the growth inhibition is determined six days after exposure of the SK-BR-3 cells to the antibody (see U.S. Pat. No. 5,677,171 issued Oct. 14, 1997). The SK-BR-3 cell growth inhibition assay is described in more detail in that patent and hereinbelow. The preferred growth inhibitory antibody is monoclonal antibody 4D5, e.g., humanized 4D5.

A molecule (e.g. antibody) which "induces cell death" is one which causes a viable cell to become nonviable. The cell is generally one which expresses the ErbB2 receptor, especially where the cell overexpresses the ErbB2 receptor. Preferably, the cell is a cancer cell, e.g. a breast, ovarian, stomach, endometrial, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreatic, prostate or bladder cancer cell. In vitro, the cell may be a SK-BR-3, BT474, Calu 3, MDA-MB-453, MDA-MB-361 or SKOV3 cell. Cell death in vitro may be determined in the absence of complement and immune effector cells to distinguish cell death induced by antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) or complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC). Thus, the assay for cell death may be performed using heat inactivated serum (i.e. in the absence of complement) and in the absence of immune effector cells. To determine whether the molecule is able to induce cell death, loss of membrane integrity as evaluated by uptake of propidium iodide (PI), trypan blue (see Moore et al. *Cytotechnology* 17:1-11 (1995)) or 7AAD can be assessed relative to untreated cells. Preferred cell death-inducing antibodies are those which induce PI uptake in the PI uptake assay in BT474 cells. Examples of antibodies which induce cell death include anti-ErbB2 antibodies 7C2 and 7F3 (WO 98/17797, expressly incorporated herein by reference), including humanized and/or affinity matured variants thereof.

A molecule (e.g. antibody) which "induces apoptosis" is one which induces programmed cell death as determined by binding of annexin V, fragmentation of DNA, cell shrinkage, dilation of endoplasmic reticulum, cell fragmentation, and/or formation of membrane vesicles (called apoptotic bodies). The cell is usually one which overexpresses the ErbB2 receptor. Preferably the cell is a tumor cell, e.g. a breast, ovarian, stomach, endometrial, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreatic, prostate or bladder cancer cell. In vitro, the cell may be a SK-BR-3, BT474, Calu 3 cell, MDA-MB-

453, MDA-MB-361 or SKOV3 cell. Various methods are available for evaluating the cellular events associated with apoptosis. For example, phosphatidyl serine (PS) translocation can be measured by annexin binding; DNA fragmentation can be evaluated through DNA laddering; and nuclear/

chromatin condensation along with DNA fragmentation can be evaluated by any increase in hypodiploid cells. Preferably, the molecule which induces apoptosis is one which results in about 2 to 50 fold, preferably about 5 to 50 fold, and most preferably about 10 to 50 fold, induction of annexin binding relative to untreated cell in an annexin binding assay using BT474 cells. Sometimes the pro-apoptotic molecule will be one which further blocks ErbB ligand activation of an ErbB receptor. In other situations, the molecule is one which does not significantly block ErbB ligand activation of an ErbB receptor. Further, the molecule may induce apoptosis, without inducing a large reduction in the percent of cells in S phase (e.g. one which only induces about 0-10% reduction in the percent of these cells relative to control). Examples of antibodies which induce apoptosis include anti-ErbB2 antibodies 7C2 and 7F3 (WO 98/17797, expressly incorporated herein by reference), including humanized and/or affinity matured variants thereof.

An antibody which "blocks" ligand activation of an ErbB receptor is one which reduces or prevents such activation as hereinabove defined, wherein the antibody is able to block ligand activation of the ErbB receptor substantially more effectively than monoclonal antibody 4D5, e.g. about as effectively as monoclonal antibodies 7F3 or 2C4 or Fab fragments thereof and preferably about as effectively as monoclonal antibody 2C4 or a Fab fragment thereof. For example, the antibody that blocks ligand activation of an ErbB receptor may be one which is about 50-100% more effective than 4D5 at blocking formation of an ErbB hetero-oligomer. Blocking of ligand activation of an ErbB receptor can occur by any means, e.g. by interfering with: ligand binding to an ErbB receptor, ErbB complex formation, tyrosine kinase activity of an ErbB receptor in an ErbB complex and/or phosphorylation of tyrosine kinase residue(s) in or by an ErbB receptor. Examples of antibodies which block ligand activation of an ErbB receptor include monoclonal antibodies 2C4 and 7F3 (which block HRG activation of ErbB2/ErbB3 and ErbB2/ErbB4 hetero-oligomers; and EGF, TGF- α , amphiregulin, HB-EGF and/or epiregulin activation of an EGFR/ErbB2 hetero-oligomer); and L26, L96 and L288 antibodies (Klapper et al. *Oncogene* 14:2099-2109 (1997)), which block EGF and NDF binding to T47D cells which express EGFR, ErbB2, ErbB3 and ErbB4. Humanized and/or affinity matured variants these and other antibodies within the definition are specifically included.

The term "epitope" is used to refer to binding sites for (monoclonal or polyclonal) antibodies on protein antigens.

Antibodies that bind to a certain epitope are identified by "epitope mapping." There are many methods known in the art for mapping and characterizing the location of epitopes on proteins, including solving the crystal structure of an antibody-antigen complex, competition assays, gene fragment expression assays, and synthetic peptide-based assays, as described, for example, in Chapter 11 of Harlow and Lane, *Using Antibodies, a Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Cold Spring Harbor, N.Y., 1999. Competition assays are discussed below. According to the gene fragment expression assays, the open reading frame encoding the protein is fragmented either randomly or by specific genetic constructions and the reactivity of the expressed fragments of the protein with the antibody to be tested is determined. The gene fragments may, for example, be produced by PCR and

then transcribed and translated into protein in vitro, in the presence of radioactive amino acids. The binding of the antibody to the radioactively labeled protein fragments is then determined by immunoprecipitation and gel electrophoresis.

Certain epitopes can also be identified by using large libraries of random peptide sequences displayed on the surface of phage particles (phage libraries). Alternatively, a defined library of overlapping peptide fragments can be tested for binding to the test antibody in simple binding assays. The latter approach is suitable to define linear epitopes of about 5 to 15 amino acids.

An antibody binds "essentially the same epitope" as a reference antibody, when the two antibodies recognize identical or sterically overlapping epitopes. The most widely used and rapid methods for determining whether two epitopes bind to identical or sterically overlapping epitopes are competition assays, which can be configured in all number of different formats, using either labeled antigen or labeled antibody. Usually, the antigen is immobilized on a 96-well plate, and the ability of unlabeled antibodies to block the binding of labeled antibodies is measured using radioactive or enzyme labels.

The "epitope 4D5" is the region in the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the antibody 4D5 (ATCC CRL 10463) binds. This epitope is close to the transmembrane domain of ErbB2, and extends from about residue 519 to about residue 625, inclusive within the ErbB2 extracellular domain sequence included in SEQ ID NO: 3, FIG. 4. To screen for antibodies which bind to the 4D5 epitope, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in Harlow and Lane, supra, can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed to assess whether the antibody binds to the 4D5 epitope of ErbB2 (e.g. any one or more residues in the region from about residue 529 to about residue 625, inclusive in SEQ ID NO: 3).

The "epitope 3H4" is the region in the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the antibody 3H4 binds. This epitope includes residues from about 541 to about 599, inclusive, in the amino acid sequence of ErbB2 extracellular domain (see FIG. 4 and SEQ ID NO: 3).

The "epitope 7C2/7F3" is the region at the N terminus of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 to which the 7C2 and/or 7F3 antibodies (each deposited with the ATCC, see below) bind. To screen for antibodies which bind to the 7C2/7F3 epitope, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Ed Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, epitope mapping can be performed to establish whether the antibody binds to the 7C2/7F3 epitope on ErbB2 (e.g. any one or more of residues in the region from about residue 22 to about residue 53 of ErbB2; see FIG. 4, and SEQ ID NO: 3).

A tumor which "does not respond, or responds poorly, to treatment with a monoclonal anti-ErbB antibody" does not show statistically significant improvement in response to anti-ErbB antibody treatment when compared to no treatment or treatment with placebo in a recognized animal model or a human clinical trial, or which responds to initial treatment with anti-ErbB antibodies but grows as treatment is continued. A particularly suitable animal model for testing the efficacy of anti-ErbB antibodies is the transgenic animal model disclosed herein, and illustrated in Example 3.

The terms "treat" or "treatment" refer to both therapeutic treatment and prophylactic or preventative measures, wherein the object is to prevent or slow down (lessen) an undesired physiological change or disorder, such as the development or spread of cancer. For purposes of this invention, beneficial or

desired clinical results include, but are not limited to, alleviation of symptoms, diminishment of extent of disease, stabilized (i.e., not worsening) state of disease, delay or slowing of disease progression, amelioration or palliation of the disease state, and remission (whether partial or total), whether detectable or undetectable. "Treatment" can also mean prolonging survival as compared to expected survival if not receiving treatment. Those in need of treatment include those already with the condition or disorder as well as those prone to have the condition or disorder or those in which the condition or disorder is to be prevented.

A "disorder" is any condition that would benefit from treatment of the present invention. This includes chronic and acute disorders or diseases including those pathological conditions which predispose the mammal to the disorder in question. Non-limiting examples of disorders to be treated herein include benign and malignant tumors; leukemias and lymphoid malignancies, in particular breast, ovarian, stomach, endometrial, salivary gland, lung, kidney, colon, thyroid, pancreatic, prostate or bladder cancer. A preferred disorder to be treated in accordance with the present invention is malignant tumor, such as breast cancer, that overexpresses an ErbB receptor (e.g. ErbB2 and/or EGFR), and does not respond or responds poorly to treatment with antibody to the receptor(s) that is/are overexpressed. A particularly preferred disorder is an ErbB2-overexpressing breast cancer that does not respond or responds poorly to HERCEPTIN® therapy.

The term "therapeutically effective amount" refers to an amount of a drug effective to treat a disease or disorder in a mammal. In the case of cancer, the therapeutically effective amount of the drug may reduce the number of cancer cells; reduce the tumor size; inhibit (i.e., slow to some extent and preferably stop) cancer cell infiltration into peripheral organs; inhibit (i.e., slow to some extent and preferably stop) tumor metastasis; inhibit, to some extent, tumor growth; and/or relieve to some extent one or more of the symptoms associated with the cancer. To the extent the drug may prevent growth and/or kill existing cancer cells, it may be cytostatic and/or cytotoxic. For cancer therapy, efficacy can, for example, be measured by assessing the time to disease progression (TTP) and/or determining the response rate (RR).

The term "objective response rate" refers to the number of treated individuals that respond to treatment as determined by a quantitative measure.

The term "cytotoxic agent" as used herein refers to a substance that inhibits or prevents the function of cells and/or causes destruction of cells. The term is intended to include radioactive isotopes (e.g. At²¹¹, I¹³¹, I¹²⁵, Y⁹⁰, Re¹⁸⁶, Re¹⁸⁸, Sm¹⁵³, Bi²¹², P³² and radioactive isotopes of Lu), chemotherapeutic agents, and toxins such as small molecule toxins or enzymatically active toxins of bacterial, fungal, plant or animal origin, including fragments and/or variants thereof.

A "chemotherapeutic agent" is a chemical compound useful in the treatment of cancer. Examples of chemotherapeutic agents include alkylating agents such as thiotepa and cyclophosphamide (CYTOXAN™); alkyl sulfonates such as busulfan, improsulfan and piposulfan; aziridines such as bezodopa, carboquone, meturedopa, and uredopa; ethylenimines and methylamelamines including altretamine, triethylenemelamine, triethylenephosphoramide, triethylenethiophosphoramide and trimethylolomelamine; nitrogen mustards such as chlorambucil, chlomaphazine, cholophosphamide, estramustine, ifosfamide, mechlorethamine, mechlorethamine oxide hydrochloride, melphalan, novembichin, phenesterine, prednimustine, trofosfamide, uracil mustard; nitrosureas such as carmustine, chlorozotocin, fotemustine, lomustine, nimustine, ranimustine; anti-

otics such as aclacinomysins, actinomycin, authramycin, azaserine, bleomycins, cactinomycin, calicheamicin, carabycin, carminomycin, carzinophilin, chromomycins, dactinomycin, daunorubicin, detorubicin, 6-diazo-5-oxo-L-norleucine, doxorubicin, epirubicin, esorubicin, idarubicin, marcellomycin, mitomycins, mycophenolic acid, nogalamycin, olivomycins, peplomycin, potfiromycin, puromycin, quelamycin, rodorubicin, streptonigrin, streptozocin, tubercidin, ubenimex, zinostatin, zorubicin; anti-metabolites such as methotrexate and 5-fluorouracil (5-FU); folic acid analogues such as denopterin, methotrexate, pteropterin, trimetrexate; purine analogs such as fludarabine, 6-mercaptopurine, thiamiprine, thioguanine; pyrimidine analogs such as ancitabine, azacitidine, 6-azauridine, carmofur, cytarabine, dideoxyuridine, doxifluridine, enocitabine, floxuridine, 5-FU; androgens such as calusterone, dromostanolone propionate, epitostanol, mepitiostane, testolactone; anti-adrenals such as aminoglutethimide, mitotane, trilostane; folic acid replenisher such as froinic acid; aceglatone; aldophosphamide glycoside; aminolevulinic acid; amsacrine; bestrabucil; bisantrene; edatraxate; defofamine; demecolcine; diaziquone; elfomithine; elliptinium acetate; etoglucid; gallium nitrate; hydroxyurea; lentinan; lonidamine; mitoguazone; mitoxantrone; mopidamol; nitracrine; pentostatin; phenamet; pirarubicin; podophyllinic acid; 2-ethylhydrazide; procarbazine; PSK7; razoxane; sizofiran; spirogermanium; tenuazonic acid; triaziquone; 2,2',2''-trichlorotriethylamine; urethan; vindesine; dacarbazine; mannomustine; mitobronitol; mitolactol; pipobroman; gacytosine; arabinoside ("Ara-C"); cyclophosphamide; thiotepa; taxanes, e.g. paclitaxel (TAXOL®, Bristol-Myers Squibb Oncology, Princeton, N.J.) and doxetaxel (TAXOTERE®, Rhône-Poulenc Rorer, Antony, France); chlorambucil; gemcitabine; 6-thioguanine; mercaptopurine; methotrexate; platinum analogs such as cisplatin and carboplatin; vinblastine; platinum; etoposide (VP-16); ifosfamide; mitomycin C; mitoxantrone; vincristine; vinorelbine; navelbine; novantrone; teniposide; daunomycin; aminopterin; xeloda; ibandronate; CPT-11; topoisomerase inhibitor RFS 2000; difluoromethylomithine (DMFO); retinoic acid; esperamicins; capecitabine; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above. Also included in this definition are anti-hormonal agents that act to regulate or inhibit hormone action on tumors such as anti-estrogens including for example tamoxifen, raloxifene, aromatase inhibiting 4(5)-imidazoles, 4-hydroxytamoxifen, trioxifene, keoxifene, LY117018, onapristone, and toremifene (Fareston); and anti-androgens such as flutamide, nilutamide, bicalutamide, leuprolide, and goserelin; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above.

The term "prodrug" as used in this application refers to a precursor or derivative form of a pharmaceutically active substance that is less cytotoxic to tumor cells compared to the parent drug and is capable of being enzymatically activated or converted into the more active parent form. See, e.g., Wilman, "Prodrugs in Cancer Chemotherapy" *Biochemical Society Transactions*, 14, pp. 375-382, 615th Meeting Belfast (1986) and Stella et al., "Prodrugs: A Chemical Approach to Targeted Drug Delivery," *Directed Drug Delivery*, Borchardt et al., (ed.), pp. 247-267, Humana Press (1985). The prodrugs of this invention include, but are not limited to, phosphate-containing prodrugs, thiophosphate-containing prodrugs, sulfate-containing prodrugs, peptide-containing prodrugs, D-amino acid-modified prodrugs, glycosylated prodrugs, β-lactam-containing prodrugs, optionally substituted phenoxycetamide-containing prodrugs or optionally substituted phenylacetamide-containing prodrugs, 5-fluorocytosine and other 5-fluorouridine prodrugs which can be converted into

the more active cytotoxic free drug. Examples of cytotoxic drugs that can be derivatized into a prodrug form for use in this invention include, but are not limited to, those chemotherapeutic agents described above.

The term “nucleic acid” refers to polynucleotides such as deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), and, where appropriate, ribonucleic acid (RNA). The term also includes, as equivalents, analogs of either DNA or RNA made from nucleotide analogs, and as applicable, single (sense or antisense) and double-stranded polynucleotides. An “isolated” nucleic acid molecule is a nucleic acid molecule that is identified and separated from at least one contaminant nucleic acid molecule with which it is ordinarily associated in the natural source of the nucleic acid. An isolated nucleic acid molecule is other than in the form or setting in which it is found in nature. Isolated nucleic acid molecules therefore are distinguished from the nucleic acid molecule as it exists in natural cells. However, an isolated nucleic acid molecule includes a nucleic acid molecule contained in cells that ordinarily express the antibody where, for example, the nucleic acid molecule is in a chromosomal location different from that of natural cells.

As used herein, the term “vector” refers to a nucleic acid molecule capable of transporting another nucleic acid to which it has been linked. The term “expression vector” includes plasmids, cosmids or phages capable of synthesizing the subject HER2 protein encoded by the respective recombinant gene carried by the vector. Preferred vectors are those capable of autonomous replication and/or expression of nucleic acids to which they are linked. In the present specification, “plasmid” and “vector” are used interchangeably, as the plasmid is the most commonly used form of vector.

As used herein, the terms “transcriptional regulatory elements” and “transcriptional regulatory sequences” are used interchangeably and refer to nucleic acid, e.g. DNA sequences necessary for the expression of an operably linked coding sequence in a particular host organism. The control sequences that are suitable for prokaryotes, for example, include a promoter, optionally an operator sequence, and a ribosome binding site. Eukaryotic cells are known to utilize promoters, enhancers, splicing signals and polyadenylation signals. These terms are intended to encompass all elements that promote or regulate transcription, including promoters, core elements required for basic interaction of RNA polymerase and transcription factors, upstream elements, enhancers, and response elements (Lewin, “Genes V” (Oxford University Press, Oxford) pages 847-873). Reference herein to the transcriptional regulatory elements of a gene or class of gene includes both all or an intact region of the naturally occurring transcriptional regulatory elements and modified forms of the transcriptional regulatory elements of the gene or group of genes. Such modified forms include rearrangements of the elements, deletions of some elements or extraneous sequences, and insertion of heterologous elements. The modular nature of transcriptional regulatory elements and the absence of position-dependence of the function of some regulatory elements such as enhancers make such modifications possible. Numerous techniques are available for dissecting the regulatory elements of genes to determine their location and function. Such information can be used to direct modification of the elements, if desired. It is preferred, however, that an intact region of the transcriptional regulatory elements of a gene be used.

The term “tissue-specific promoter” means a nucleotide sequence that serves as a promoter, i.e., regulates expression of a selected DNA sequence operably linked to the promoter, and which effects expression of the selected DNA sequence in

specific cells of a tissue, such as cells of a mammary gland. In an illustrative embodiment, gene constructs utilizing mammary gland-specific promoters can be used to preferentially direct expression of a HER2 protein or protein fragment in the mammary gland tissue.

Nucleic acid is “operably linked” when it is placed into a functional relationship with another nucleic acid sequence. For example, DNA for a presequence or secretory leader is operably linked to DNA for a polypeptide if it is expressed as a preprotein that participates in the secretion of the polypeptide; a promoter or enhancer is operably linked to a coding sequence if it affects the transcription of the sequence; or a ribosome binding site is operably linked to a coding sequence if it is positioned so as to facilitate translation. Generally, “operably linked” means that the DNA sequences being linked are contiguous, and, in the case of a secretory leader, contiguous and in reading phase. However, enhancers do not have to be contiguous. Linking is accomplished by ligation at convenient restriction sites. If such sites do not exist, the synthetic oligonucleotide adaptors or linkers are used in accordance with conventional practice.

The term “transfection” refers to the introduction of a nucleic acid, e.g., an expression vector, into a recipient cell by nucleic acid-mediated gene transfer. “Transformation”, as used herein, refers to a process in which a cell’s genotype is changed as a result of the cellular uptake of exogenous DNA or RNA, and, for example, the transformed cell expresses a recombinant form of HER2.

As used herein, the term “transgene” refers to a nucleic acid sequence which is partly or entirely heterologous, i.e., foreign, to the transgenic animal or cell into which it is introduced, or, is homologous to an endogenous gene of the transgenic animal or cell into which it is introduced, but which is designed to be inserted, or is inserted, into the animal’s genome in such a way as to alter the genome of the cell into which it is inserted (e.g., it is inserted at a location which differs from that of the natural gene or its insertion results in a knockout). A transgene can be operably linked to one or more transcriptional regulatory sequences and any other nucleic acid, such as introns, that may be necessary for optimal expression of a selected nucleic acid.

Accordingly, the term “transgene construct” refers to a nucleic acid which includes a transgene, and (optionally) such other nucleic acid sequences as transcriptionally regulatory sequence, polyadenylation sites, replication origins, marker genes, etc., which may be useful in the general manipulation of the transgene for insertion in the genome of a host organism.

The term “transgenic” is used herein as an adjective to describe the property, for example, of an animal or a construct, of harboring a transgene. For instance, as used herein, a “transgenic organism” is any animal, preferably a non-human mammal, in which one or more of the cells of the animal contain heterologous nucleic acid introduced by way of human intervention, such as by transgenic techniques well known in the art. The nucleic acid is introduced into the cell, directly or indirectly by introduction into a precursor of the cell, by way of deliberate genetic manipulation, such as by microinjection or by infection with a recombinant virus. The term genetic manipulation does not include classical crossbreeding, or in vitro fertilization, but rather is directed to the introduction of a recombinant DNA molecule. This molecule may be integrated within a chromosome, or it may be extrachromosomally replicating DNA. In the typical transgenic animals described herein, the transgene causes cells to express or overexpress a recombinant form of the subject HER2 proteins. The terms “founder line” and “founder ani-

mal” refer to those animals that are the mature product of the embryos to which the transgene was added, i.e., those animals that grew from the embryos into which DNA was inserted, and that were implanted into one or more surrogate hosts.

The terms “progeny” and “progeny of the transgenic animal” refer to any and all offspring of every generation subsequent to the originally transformed mammals. The term “non-human mammal” refers to all members of the class Mammalia except humans. “Mammal” refers to any animal classified as a mammal, including humans, domestic and farm animals, and zoo, sports, or pet animals, such as mouse, rat, rabbit, pig, sheep, goat, cattle and higher primates.

As used herein, the expressions “cell,” “cell line,” and “cell culture” are used interchangeably and all such designations include progeny. Thus, the words “transformants” and “transformed cells” include the primary subject cell and cultures derived therefrom without regard for the number of transfers. It is also understood that all progeny may not be precisely identical in DNA content, due to deliberate or inadvertent mutations. Mutant progeny that have the same function or biological activity as screened for in the originally transformed cell are included. Where distinct designations are intended, it will be clear from the context.

A “liposome” is a small vesicle composed of various types of lipids, phospholipids and/or surfactant which is useful for delivery of a drug (such as the anti-ErbB2 antibodies disclosed herein and, optionally, a chemotherapeutic agent) to a mammal. The components of the liposome are commonly arranged in a bilayer formation, similar to the lipid arrangement of biological membranes.

The term “package insert” is used to refer to instructions customarily included in commercial packages of therapeutic products, that contain information about the indications, usage, dosage, administration, contraindications and/or warnings concerning the use of such therapeutic products.

A “cardioprotectant” is a compound or composition which prevents or reduces myocardial dysfunction (i.e. cardiomyopathy and/or congestive heart failure) associated with administration of a drug, such as an anti-ErbB antibody or its maytansinoid conjugate, to a patient. The cardioprotectant may, for example, block or reduce a free-radical-mediated cardiotoxic effect and/or prevent or reduce oxidative-stress injury. Examples of cardioprotectants encompassed by the present definition include the iron-chelating agent dexrazoxane (ICRF-187) (Seifert et al. *The Annals of Pharmacotherapy* 28:1063-1072 (1994)); a lipid-lowering agent and/or anti-oxidant such as probucol (Singal et al. *J. Mol. Cell Cardiol.* 27:1055-1063 (1995)); amifostine (aminothiols 2-[(3-aminopropyl)amino]ethanethiol-dihydrogen phosphate ester, also called WR-2721, and the dephosphorylated cellular uptake form thereof called WR-1065) and S-3-(3-methylaminopropylamino)propylphosphorothioic acid (WR-151327), see Green et al. *Cancer Research* 54:738-741 (1994); digoxin (Bristow, M. R. In: Bristow M R, ed. *Drug-Induced Heart Disease*. New York: Elsevier 191-215 (1980)); beta-blockers such as metoprolol (Hjalmarson et al. *Drugs* 47:Suppl 4:31-9 (1994); and Shaddy et al. *Am. Heart J.* 129:197-9 (1995)); vitamin E; ascorbic acid (vitamin C); free radical scavengers such as oleanolic acid, ursolic acid and N-acetylcysteine (NAC); spin trapping compounds such as alpha-phenyl-tert-butyl nitron (PBN); (Paracchini et al., *Anticancer Res.* 13:1607-1612 (1993)); selenoorganic compounds such as P251 (Elbesen); and the like.

2. Detailed Description

The present invention is based on results obtained in a novel murine HER2-transgenic tumor model in which HER-

CEPTIN® was derived, had little effect on tumor growth. Using this model to test the efficacy of HERCEPTIN® and HERCEPTIN®-maytansinoid conjugates, it was surprisingly found that while the transplanted tumor obtained from such transgenic mice responded poorly to HERCEPTIN® treatment, the HERCEPTIN®-maytansinoid conjugates were highly efficacious.

Accordingly, the present invention is based on the use of anti-ErbB antibody-maytansinoid conjugates in the treatment of ErbB overexpressing tumors that do not respond well to anti-ErbB antibody and/or maytansinoid treatment.

A. Production of anti-ErbB Antibodies

A description follows as to exemplary techniques for the production of the antibodies used in accordance with the present invention. The production of antibodies will be illustrated with reference to anti-ErbB2 antibodies but it will be apparent for those skilled in the art that antibodies to other members of the ErbB receptor family can be produced and modified in a similar manner.

The ErbB2 antigen to be used for production of antibodies may be, e.g., a soluble form of the extracellular domain of ErbB2 or a portion thereof, containing the desired epitope. Alternatively, cells expressing ErbB2 at their cell surface (e.g. NIH-3T3 cells transformed to overexpress ErbB2; or a carcinoma cell line such as SK-BR-3 cells, see Stancovski et al. *PNAS (USA)* 88:8691-8695 (1991)) can be used to generate antibodies. Other forms of ErbB2 useful for generating antibodies will be apparent to those skilled in the art.

(i) Polyclonal Antibodies

Polyclonal antibodies are preferably raised in animals by multiple subcutaneous (sc) or intraperitoneal (ip) injections of the relevant antigen and an adjuvant. It may be useful to conjugate the relevant antigen to a protein that is immunogenic in the species to be immunized, e.g., keyhole limpet hemocyanin, serum albumin, bovine thyroglobulin, or soybean trypsin inhibitor using a bifunctional or derivatizing agent, for example, maleimidobenzoyl sulfosuccinimide ester (conjugation through cysteine residues), N-hydroxysuccinimide (through lysine residues), glutaraldehyde, succinic anhydride, SOCl₂, or R¹N=C=NR, where R and R¹ are different alkyl groups.

Animals are immunized against the antigen, immunogenic conjugates, or derivatives by combining, e.g., 100 µg or 5 µg of the protein or conjugate (for rabbits or mice, respectively) with 3 volumes of Freund’s complete adjuvant and injecting the solution intradermally at multiple sites. One month later the animals are boosted with 1/5 to 1/10 the original amount of peptide or conjugate in Freund’s complete adjuvant by subcutaneous injection at multiple sites. Seven to 14 days later the animals are bled and the serum is assayed for antibody titer. Animals are boosted until the titer plateaus. Preferably, the animal is boosted with the conjugate of the same antigen, but conjugated to a different protein and/or through a different cross-linking reagent. Conjugates also can be made in recombinant cell culture as protein fusions. Also, aggregating agents such as alum are suitably used to enhance the immune response.

(ii) Monoclonal Antibodies

Monoclonal antibodies are obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, i.e., the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical except for possible naturally occurring mutations that may be present in minor amounts. Thus, the modifier “monoclonal” indicates the character of the antibody as not being a mixture of discrete antibodies.

For example, the monoclonal antibodies may be made using the hybridoma method first described by Kohler et al.,

Nature, 256:495 (1975), or may be made by recombinant DNA methods (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567).

In the hybridoma method, a mouse or other appropriate host animal, such as a hamster, is immunized as hereinabove described to elicit lymphocytes that produce or are capable of producing antibodies that will specifically bind to the protein used for immunization. Alternatively, lymphocytes may be immunized in vitro. Lymphocytes then are fused with myeloma cells using a suitable fusing agent, such as polyethylene glycol, to form a hybridoma cell (Goding, *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice*, pp. 59-103 (Academic Press, 1986)).

The hybridoma cells thus prepared are seeded and grown in a suitable culture medium that preferably contains one or more substances that inhibit the growth or survival of the unfused, parental myeloma cells. For example, if the parental myeloma cells lack the enzyme hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase (HGPRT or HPRT), the culture medium for the hybridomas typically will include hypoxanthine, aminopterin, and thymidine (HAT medium), which substances prevent the growth of HGPRT-deficient cells.

Preferred myeloma cells are those that fuse efficiently, support stable high-level production of antibody by the selected antibody-producing cells, and are sensitive to a medium such as HAT medium. Among these, preferred myeloma cell lines are murine myeloma lines, such as those derived from MOPC-21 and MPC-11 mouse tumors available from the Salk Institute Cell Distribution Center, San Diego, Calif. USA, and SP-2 or X63-Ag8-653 cells available from the American Type Culture Collection, Rockville, Md. USA. Human myeloma and mouse-human heteromyeloma cell lines also have been described for the production of human monoclonal antibodies (Kozbor, *J. Immunol.*, 133:3001 (1984); and Brodeur et al., *Monoclonal Antibody Production Techniques and Applications*, pp. 51-63 (Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1987)).

Culture medium in which hybridoma cells are growing is assayed for production of monoclonal antibodies directed against the antigen. Preferably, the binding specificity of monoclonal antibodies produced by hybridoma cells is determined by immunoprecipitation or by an in vitro binding assay, such as radioimmunoassay (RIA) or enzyme-linked immunoabsorbent assay (ELISA).

The binding affinity of the monoclonal antibody can, for example, be determined by the Scatchard analysis of Munson et al., *Anal. Biochem.*, 107:220 (1980).

After hybridoma cells are identified that produce antibodies of the desired specificity, affinity, and/or activity, the clones may be subcloned by limiting dilution procedures and grown by standard methods (Goding, *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice*, pp. 59-103 (Academic Press, 1986)). Suitable culture media for this purpose include, for example, D-MEM or RPMI-1640 medium. In addition, the hybridoma cells may be grown in vivo as ascites tumors in an animal.

The monoclonal antibodies secreted by the subclones are suitably separated from the culture medium, ascites fluid, or serum by conventional antibody purification procedures such as, for example, protein A-Sepharose, hydroxylapatite chromatography, gel electrophoresis, dialysis, or affinity chromatography.

DNA encoding the monoclonal antibodies is readily isolated and sequenced using conventional procedures (e.g., by using oligonucleotide probes that are capable of binding specifically to genes encoding the heavy and light chains of murine antibodies). The hybridoma cells serve as a preferred source of such DNA. Once isolated, the DNA may be placed

into expression vectors, which are then transfected into host cells such as *E. coli* cells, simian COS cells, Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cells, or myeloma cells that do not otherwise produce antibody protein, to obtain the synthesis of monoclonal antibodies in the recombinant host cells. Review articles on recombinant expression in bacteria of DNA encoding the antibody include Skerra et al., *Curr. Opinion in Immunol.*, 5:256-262 (1993) and Plückthun, *Immunol. Revs.*, 130: 151-188 (1992).

In a further embodiment, monoclonal antibodies or antibody fragments can be isolated from antibody phage libraries generated using the techniques described in McCafferty et al., *Nature*, 348:552-554 (1990). Clackson et al., *Nature*, 352: 624-628 (1991) and Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.*, 222:581-597 (1991) describe the isolation of murine and human antibodies, respectively, using phage libraries. Subsequent publications describe the production of high affinity (nM range) human antibodies by chain shuffling (Marks et al., *Bio/Technology*, 10:779-783 (1992)), as well as combinatorial infection and in vivo recombination as a strategy for constructing very large phage libraries (Waterhouse et al., *Nuc. Acids. Res.*, 21:2265-2266 (1993)). Thus, these techniques are viable alternatives to traditional monoclonal antibody hybridoma techniques for isolation of monoclonal antibodies.

The DNA also may be modified, for example, by substituting the coding sequence for human heavy chain and light chain constant domains in place of the homologous murine sequences (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567; and Morrison, et al., *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA*, 81:6851 (1984)), or by covalently joining to the immunoglobulin coding sequence all or part of the coding sequence for a non-immunoglobulin polypeptide.

Typically such non-immunoglobulin polypeptides are substituted for the constant domains of an antibody, or they are substituted for the variable domains of one antigen-combining site of an antibody to create a chimeric bivalent antibody comprising one antigen-combining site having specificity for an antigen and another antigen-combining site having specificity for a different antigen.

(iii) Humanized Antibodies

Methods for humanizing non-human antibodies have been described in the art. Preferably, a humanized antibody has one or more amino acid residues introduced into it from a source which is non-human. These non-human amino acid residues are often referred to as "import" residues, which are typically taken from an "import" variable domain. Humanization can be essentially performed following the method of Winter and co-workers (Jones et al., *Nature*, 321:522-525 (1986); Riechmann et al., *Nature*, 332:323-327 (1988); Verhoeyen et al., *Science*, 239:1534-1536 (1988)), by substituting hypervariable region sequences for the corresponding sequences of a human antibody. Accordingly, such "humanized" antibodies are chimeric antibodies (U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567) wherein substantially less than an intact human variable domain has been substituted by the corresponding sequence from a non-human species. In practice, humanized antibodies are typically human antibodies in which some hypervariable region residues and possibly some FR residues are substituted by residues from analogous sites in rodent antibodies.

The choice of human variable domains, both light and heavy, to be used in making the humanized antibodies is very important to reduce antigenicity. According to the so-called "best-fit" method, the sequence of the variable domain of a rodent antibody is screened against the entire library of known human variable-domain sequences. The human sequence which is closest to that of the rodent is then accepted as the human framework region (FR) for the humanized antibody (Sims et al., *J. Immunol.*, 151:2296 (1993); Chothia et

al., *J. Mol. Biol.*, 196:901 (1987)). Another method uses a particular framework region derived from the consensus sequence of all human antibodies of a particular subgroup of light or heavy chains. The same framework may be used for several different humanized antibodies (Carter et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 89:4285 (1992); Presta et al., *J. Immunol.*, 151:2623 (1993)).

It is further important that antibodies be humanized with retention of high affinity for the antigen and other favorable biological properties. To achieve this goal, according to a preferred method, humanized antibodies are prepared by a process of analysis of the parental sequences and various conceptual humanized products using three-dimensional models of the parental and humanized sequences. Three-dimensional immunoglobulin models are commonly available and are familiar to those skilled in the art. Computer programs are available which illustrate and display probable three-dimensional conformational structures of selected candidate immunoglobulin sequences. Inspection of these displays permits analysis of the likely role of the residues in the functioning of the candidate immunoglobulin sequence, i.e., the analysis of residues that influence the ability of the candidate immunoglobulin to bind its antigen. In this way, FR residues can be selected and combined from the recipient and import sequences so that the desired antibody characteristic, such as increased affinity for the target antigen(s), is achieved. In general, the hypervariable region residues are directly and most substantially involved in influencing antigen binding.

Example 1 below describes production of an exemplary humanized anti-ErbB2 antibody. The humanized antibody herein may, for example, comprise nonhuman hypervariable region residues incorporated into a human variable heavy domain and may further comprise a framework region (FR) substitution at a position selected from the group consisting of 69H, 71H and 73H utilizing the variable domain numbering system set forth in Kabat et al., *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest*, 5th Ed. Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md. (1991). In one embodiment, the humanized antibody comprises FR substitutions at two or all of positions 69H, 71H and 73H.

Various forms of the humanized antibody are contemplated. For example, the humanized antibody may be an antibody fragment, such as a Fab. Alternatively, the humanized antibody may be an intact antibody, such as an intact IgG1 antibody.

(iv) Human Antibodies

As an alternative to humanization, human antibodies can be generated. For example, it is now possible to produce transgenic animals (e.g., mice) that are capable, upon immunization, of producing a full repertoire of human antibodies in the absence of endogenous immunoglobulin production. For example, it has been described that the homozygous deletion of the antibody heavy-chain joining region (J_H) gene in chimeric and germ-line mutant mice results in complete inhibition of endogenous antibody production. Transfer of the human germ-line immunoglobulin gene array in such germ-line mutant mice will result in the production of human antibodies upon antigen challenge. See, e.g., Jakobovits et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 90:2551 (1993); Jakobovits et al., *Nature*, 362:255-258 (1993); Bruggermann et al., *Year in Immuno.*, 7:33 (1993); and U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,591,669, 5,589,369 and 5,545,807.

Alternatively, phage display technology (McCafferty et al., *Nature* 348:552-553 (1990)) can be used to produce human antibodies and antibody fragments in vitro, from immunoglobulin variable (V) domain gene repertoires from unimmunized donors. According to this technique, antibody V

domain genes are cloned in-frame into either a major or minor coat protein gene of a filamentous bacteriophage, such as M13 or fd, and displayed as functional antibody fragments on the surface of the phage particle. Because the filamentous particle contains a single-stranded DNA copy of the phage genome, selections based on the functional properties of the antibody also result in selection of the gene encoding the antibody exhibiting those properties. Thus, the phage mimics some of the properties of the B-cell. Phage display can be performed in a variety of formats; for their review see, e.g., Johnson, Kevin S. and Chiswell, David J., *Current Opinion in Structural Biology* 3:564-571 (1993). Several sources of V-gene segments can be used for phage display. Clackson et al., *Nature*, 352:624-628 (1991) isolated a diverse array of anti-oxazolone antibodies from a small random combinatorial library of V genes derived from the spleens of immunized mice. A repertoire of V genes from unimmunized human donors can be constructed and antibodies to a diverse array of antigens (including self-antigens) can be isolated essentially following the techniques described by Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 222:581-597 (1991), or Griffith et al., *EMBO J.* 12:725-734 (1993). See, also, U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,565,332 and 5,573,905.

As discussed above, human antibodies may also be generated by in vitro activated B cells (see U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,567,610 and 5,229,275).

Human anti-ErbB2 antibodies are described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,772,997 issued Jun. 30, 1998 and WO 97/00271 published Jan. 3, 1997.

(v) Antibody Fragments

Various techniques have been developed for the production of antibody fragments. Traditionally, these fragments were derived via proteolytic digestion of intact antibodies (see, e.g., Morimoto et al., *Journal of Biochemical and Biophysical Methods* 24:107-117 (1992); and Brennan et al., *Science*, 229:81 (1985)). However, these fragments can now be produced directly by recombinant host cells. For example, the antibody fragments can be isolated from the antibody phage libraries discussed above. Alternatively, Fab'-SH fragments can be directly recovered from *E. coli* and chemically coupled to form F(ab')₂ fragments (Carter et al., *Bio/Technology* 10:163-167 (1992)). According to another approach, F(ab')₂ fragments can be isolated directly from recombinant host cell culture. Other techniques for the production of antibody fragments will be apparent to the skilled practitioner. In other embodiments, the antibody of choice is a single chain Fv fragment (scFv). See WO 93/16185; U.S. Pat. No. 5,571,894; and U.S. Pat. No. 5,587,458. The antibody fragment may also be a "linear antibody", e.g., as described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,641,870 for example. Such linear antibody fragments may be monospecific or bispecific.

(vi) Bispecific Antibodies

Bispecific antibodies are antibodies that have binding specificities for at least two different epitopes. Exemplary bispecific antibodies may bind to two different epitopes of the ErbB2 protein. Other such antibodies may combine an ErbB2 binding site with binding site(s) for EGFR, ErbB3 and/or ErbB4. Alternatively, an anti-ErbB2 arm may be combined with an arm which binds to a triggering molecule on a leukocyte such as a T-cell receptor molecule (e.g. CD2 or CD3), or Fc receptors for IgG (FcγR), such as FcγRI (CD64), FcγRII (CD32) and FcγRIII (CD16) so as to focus cellular defense mechanisms to the ErbB2-expressing cell. Bispecific antibodies may also be used to localize cytotoxic agents to cells which express ErbB2. WO 96/16673 describes a bispecific anti-ErbB2/anti-FcγRIII antibody and U.S. Pat. No. 5,837,234 discloses a bispecific anti-ErbB2/anti-FcγRI antibody. A

bispecific anti-ErbB2/Fc α antibody is shown in WO98/02463. U.S. Pat. No. 5,821,337 teaches a bispecific anti-ErbB2/anti-CD3 antibody.

Methods for making bispecific antibodies are known in the art. Traditional production of full length bispecific antibodies is based on the coexpression of two immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pairs, where the two chains have different specificities (Millstein et al., *Nature*, 305:537-539 (1983)). Because of the random assortment of immunoglobulin heavy and light chains, these hybridomas (quadromas) produce a potential mixture of 10 different antibody molecules, of which only one has the correct bispecific structure. Purification of the correct molecule, which is usually done by affinity chromatography steps, is rather cumbersome, and the product yields are low. Similar procedures are disclosed in WO 93/08829, and in Trauneker et al., *EMBO J.*, 10:3655-3659 (1991).

According to a different approach, antibody variable domains with the desired binding specificities (antibody-antigen combining sites) are fused to immunoglobulin constant domain sequences. The fusion preferably is with an immunoglobulin heavy chain constant domain, comprising at least part of the hinge, CH2, and CH3 regions. It is preferred to have the first heavy-chain constant region (CH1) containing the site necessary for light chain binding, present in at least one of the fusions. DNAs encoding the immunoglobulin heavy chain fusions and, if desired, the immunoglobulin light chain, are inserted into separate expression vectors, and are co-transfected into a suitable host organism. This provides for great flexibility in adjusting the mutual proportions of the three polypeptide fragments in embodiments when unequal ratios of the three polypeptide chains used in the construction provide the optimum yields. It is, however, possible to insert the coding sequences for two or all three polypeptide chains in one expression vector when the expression of at least two polypeptide chains in equal ratios results in high yields or when the ratios are of no particular significance.

In a preferred embodiment of this approach, the bispecific antibodies are composed of a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain with a first binding specificity in one arm, and a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pair (providing a second binding specificity) in the other arm. It was found that this asymmetric structure facilitates the separation of the desired bispecific compound from unwanted immunoglobulin chain combinations, as the presence of an immunoglobulin light chain in only one half of the bispecific molecule provides for a facile way of separation. This approach is disclosed in WO 94/04690. For further details of generating bispecific antibodies see, for example, Suresh et al., *Methods in Enzymology*, 121:210 (1986).

According to another approach described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,731,168, the interface between a pair of antibody molecules can be engineered to maximize the percentage of heterodimers which are recovered from recombinant cell culture. The preferred interface comprises at least a part of the C_H3 domain of an antibody constant domain. In this method, one or more small amino acid side chains from the interface of the first antibody molecule are replaced with larger side chains (e.g. tyrosine or tryptophan). Compensatory "cavities" of identical or similar size to the large side chain(s) are created on the interface of the second antibody molecule by replacing large amino acid side chains with smaller ones (e.g. alanine or threonine). This provides a mechanism for increasing the yield of the heterodimer over other unwanted end-products such as homodimers.

Techniques for generating bispecific antibodies from antibody fragments have also been described in the literature. For

example, bispecific antibodies can be prepared using chemical linkage. Brennan et al., *Science*, 229: 81 (1985) describe a procedure wherein intact antibodies are proteolytically cleaved to generate F(ab')₂ fragments. These fragments are reduced in the presence of the dithiol complexing agent sodium arsenite to stabilize vicinal dithiols and prevent intermolecular disulfide formation. The Fab' fragments generated are then converted to thionitrobenzoate (TNB) derivatives. One of the Fab'-TNB derivatives is then reconverted to the Fab'-thiol by reduction with mercaptoethylamine and is mixed with an equimolar amount of the other Fab'-TNB derivative to form the bispecific antibody. The bispecific antibodies produced can be used as agents for the selective immobilization of enzymes.

Recent progress has facilitated the direct recovery of Fab'-SH fragments from *E. coli*, which can be chemically coupled to form bispecific antibodies. Shalaby et al., *J. Exp. Med.*, 175: 217-225 (1992) describe the production of a fully humanized bispecific antibody F(ab')₂ molecule. Each Fab' fragment was separately secreted from *E. coli* and subjected to directed chemical coupling in vitro to form the bispecific antibody. The bispecific antibody thus formed was able to bind to cells overexpressing the ErbB2 receptor and normal human T cells, as well as trigger the lytic activity of human cytotoxic lymphocytes against human breast tumor targets.

Various techniques for making and isolating bispecific antibody fragments directly from recombinant cell culture have also been described. For example, bispecific antibodies have been produced using leucine zippers. Kostelny et al., *J. Immunol.*, 148(5):1547-1553 (1992). The leucine zipper peptides from the Fos and Jun proteins were linked to the Fab' portions of two different antibodies by gene fusion. The antibody homodimers were reduced at the hinge region to form monomers and then re-oxidized to form the antibody heterodimers. This method can also be utilized for the production of antibody homodimers. The "diabody" technology described by Hollinger et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 90:6444-6448 (1993) has provided an alternative mechanism for making bispecific antibody fragments. The fragments comprise a heavy-chain variable domain (V_H) connected to a light-chain variable domain (V_L) by a linker which is too short to allow pairing between the two domains on the same chain. Accordingly, the V_H and V_L domains of one fragment are forced to pair with the complementary V_L and V_H domains of another fragment, thereby forming two antigen-binding sites. Another strategy for making bispecific antibody fragments by the use of single-chain Fv (sFv) dimers has also been reported. See Gruber et al., *J. Immunol.*, 152:5368 (1994).

Antibodies with more than two valencies are contemplated. For example, trispecific antibodies can be prepared. Tutt et al. *J. Immunol.* 147: 60 (1991).

(vii) Other Amino Acid Sequence Modifications

Amino acid sequence modification(s) of the anti-ErbB2 antibodies described herein are contemplated. For example, it may be desirable to improve the binding affinity and/or other biological properties of the antibody. Amino acid sequence variants of the anti-ErbB2 antibody are prepared by introducing appropriate nucleotide changes into the anti-ErbB2 antibody nucleic acid, or by peptide synthesis. Such modifications include, for example, deletions from, and/or insertions into and/or substitutions of, residues within the amino acid sequences of the anti-ErbB2 antibody. Any combination of deletion, insertion, and substitution is made to arrive at the final construct, provided that the final construct possesses the desired characteristics. The amino acid changes also may

alter post-translational processes of the anti-ErbB2 antibody, such as changing the number or position of glycosylation sites.

A useful method for identification of certain residues or regions of the anti-ErbB2 antibody that are preferred locations for mutagenesis is called "alanine scanning mutagenesis" as described by Cunningham and Wells *Science*, 244: 1081-1085 (1989). Here, a residue or group of target residues are identified (e.g., charged residues such as arg, asp, his, lys, and glu) and replaced by a neutral or negatively charged amino acid (most preferably alanine or polyalanine) to affect the interaction of the amino acids with ErbB2 antigen. Those amino acid locations demonstrating functional sensitivity to the substitutions then are refined by introducing further or other variants at, or for, the sites of substitution. Thus, while the site for introducing an amino acid sequence variation is predetermined, the nature of the mutation per se need not be predetermined. For example, to analyze the performance of a mutation at a given site, ala scanning or random mutagenesis is conducted at the target codon or region and the expressed anti-ErbB2 antibody variants are screened for the desired activity.

Amino acid sequence insertions include amino- and/or carboxyl-terminal fusions ranging in length from one residue to polypeptides containing a hundred or more residues, as well as intrasequence insertions of single or multiple amino acid residues. Examples of terminal insertions include an anti-ErbB2 antibody with an N-terminal methionyl residue or the antibody fused to a cytotoxic polypeptide. Other insertional variants of the anti-ErbB2 antibody molecule include the fusion to the N- or C-terminus of the anti-ErbB2 antibody to an enzyme (e.g. for ADEPT) or a polypeptide which increases the serum half-life of the antibody.

Another type of variant is an amino acid substitution variant. These variants have at least one amino acid residue in the anti-ErbB2 antibody molecule replaced by a different residue. The sites of greatest interest for substitutional mutagenesis include the hypervariable regions, but FR alterations are also contemplated. Conservative substitutions are shown in Table 1 under the heading of "preferred substitutions". If such substitutions result in a change in biological activity, then more substantial changes, denominated "exemplary substitutions" in Table 1, or as further described below in reference to amino acid classes, may be introduced and the products screened.

TABLE 1

Original Residue	Exemplary Substitutions	Preferred Substitutions
Ala (A)	val; leu; ile	val
Arg (R)	lys; gln; asn	lys
Asn (N)	gln; his; asp, lys; arg	gln
Asp (D)	glu; asn	glu
Cys (C)	ser; ala	ser
Gln (Q)	asn; glu	asn
Glu (E)	asp; gln	asp
Gly (G)	ala	ala
His (H)	asn; gln; lys; arg	arg
Ile (I)	leu; val; met; ala; phe; norleucine	leu
Leu (L)	norleucine; ile; val; met; ala; phe	ile
Lys (K)	arg; gln; asn	arg
Met (M)	leu; phe; ile	leu
Phe (F)	leu; val; ile; ala; tyr	tyr
Pro (P)	ala	ala
Ser (S)	thr	thr
Thr (T)	ser	ser

TABLE 1-continued

Original Residue	Exemplary Substitutions	Preferred Substitutions
Trp (W)	tyr; phe	tyr
Tyr (Y)	trp; phe; thr; ser	phe
Val (V)	ile; leu; met; phe; ala; norleucine	leu

Substantial modifications in the biological properties of the antibody are accomplished by selecting substitutions that differ significantly in their effect on maintaining (a) the structure of the polypeptide backbone in the area of the substitution, for example, as a sheet or helical conformation, (b) the charge or hydrophobicity of the molecule at the target site, or (c) the bulk of the side chain. Naturally occurring residues are divided into groups based on common side-chain properties:

- (1) hydrophobic: norleucine, met, ala, val, leu, ile;
- (2) neutral hydrophilic: cys, ser, thr;
- (3) acidic: asp, glu;
- (4) basic: asn, gln, his, lys, arg;
- (5) residues that influence chain orientation: gly, pro; and
- (6) aromatic: trp, tyr, phe.

Non-conservative substitutions will entail exchanging a member of one of these classes for another class.

Any cysteine residue not involved in maintaining the proper conformation of the anti-ErbB2 antibody also may be substituted, generally with serine, to improve the oxidative stability of the molecule and prevent aberrant crosslinking. Conversely, cysteine bond(s) may be added to the antibody to improve its stability (particularly where the antibody is an antibody fragment such as an Fv fragment).

A particularly preferred type of substitutional variant involves substituting one or more hypervariable region residues of a parent antibody (e.g. a humanized or human antibody). Generally, the resulting variant(s) selected for further development will have improved biological properties relative to the parent antibody from which they are generated. A convenient way for generating such substitutional variants involves affinity maturation using phage display. Briefly, several hypervariable region sites (e.g. 6-7 sites) are mutated to generate all possible amino substitutions at each site. The antibody variants thus generated are displayed in a monovalent fashion from filamentous phage particles as fusions to the gene III product of M13 packaged within each particle. The phage-displayed variants are then screened for their biological activity (e.g. binding affinity) as herein disclosed. In order to identify candidate hypervariable region sites for modification, alanine scanning mutagenesis can be performed to identify hypervariable region residues contributing significantly to antigen binding. Alternatively, or additionally, it may be beneficial to analyze a crystal structure of the antigen-antibody complex to identify contact points between the antibody and human ErbB2. Such contact residues and neighboring residues are candidates for substitution according to the techniques elaborated herein. Once such variants are generated, the panel of variants is subjected to screening as described herein and antibodies with superior properties in one or more relevant assays may be selected for further development.

It may be desirable to modify the antibody of the invention with respect to effector function, e.g. so as to enhance antigen-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) and/or complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) of the antibody. This may be achieved by introducing one or more amino acid substitutions in an Fc region of the antibody. Alternatively or additionally, cysteine residue(s) may be introduced in the Fc region, thereby allowing interchain disulfide bond formation

in this region. The homodimeric antibody thus generated may have improved internalization capability and/or increased complement-mediated cell killing and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC). See Caron et al., *J. Exp. Med.* 176:1191-1195 (1992) and Shopes, B. *J. Immunol.* 148:2918-2922 (1992). Homodimeric antibodies with enhanced anti-tumor activity may also be prepared using heterobifunctional cross-linkers as described in Wolff et al. *Cancer Research* 53:2560-2565 (1993). Alternatively, an antibody can be engineered which has dual Fc regions and may thereby have enhanced complement lysis and ADCC capabilities. See Stevenson et al. *Anti-Cancer Drug Design* 3:219-230 (1989).

To increase the serum half life of the antibody, one may incorporate a salvage receptor binding epitope into the antibody (especially an antibody fragment) as described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,739,277, for example. As used herein, the term "salvage receptor binding epitope" refers to an epitope of the Fc region of an IgG molecule (e.g., IgG₁, IgG₂, IgG₃, or IgG₄) that is responsible for increasing the in vivo serum half-life of the IgG molecule.

(viii) Glycosylation Variants

Antibodies are glycosylated at conserved positions in their constant regions (Jefferis and Lund, *Chem. Immunol.* 65:111-128 [1997]; Wright and Morrison, *TibTECH* 15:26-32 [1997]). The oligosaccharide side chains of the immunoglobulins affect the protein's function (Boyd et al., *Mol. Immunol.* 32:1311-1318 [1996]; Wittwe and Howard, *Biochem.* 29:4175-4180 [1990]), and the intramolecular interaction between portions of the glycoprotein which can affect the conformation and presented three-dimensional surface of the glycoprotein (Hefferis and Lund, supra; Wyss and Wagner, *Current Opin. Biotech.* 7:409-416 [1996]). Oligosaccharides may also serve to target a given glycoprotein to certain molecules based upon specific recognition structures. For example, it has been reported that in agalactosylated IgG, the oligosaccharide moiety "flips" out of the inter-CH2 space and terminal N-acetylglucosamine residues become available to bind mannose binding protein (Malhotra et al., *Nature Med.* 1:237-243 [1995]). Removal by glycopeptidase of the oligosaccharides from CAMPATH-1H (a recombinant humanized murine monoclonal IgG1 antibody which recognizes the CDw52 antigen of human lymphocytes) produced in Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cells resulted in a complete reduction in complement mediated lysis (CMCL) (Boyd et al., *Mol. Immunol.* 32:1311-1318 [1996]), while selective removal of sialic acid residues using neuraminidase resulted in no loss of DMCL. Glycosylation of antibodies has also been reported to affect antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC). In particular, CHO cells with tetracycline-regulated expression of $\beta(1,4)$ -N-acetylglucosaminyltransferase III (GnTIII), a glycosyltransferase catalyzing formation of bisecting GlcNAc, was reported to have improved ADCC activity (Umana et al., *Mature Biotech.* 17:176-180 [1999]).

Glycosylation of antibodies is typically either N-linked or O-linked. N-linked refers to the attachment of the carbohydrate moiety to the side chain of an asparagine residue. The tripeptide sequences asparagine-X-serine and asparagine-X-threonine, where X is any amino acid except proline, are the recognition sequences for enzymatic attachment of the carbohydrate moiety to the asparagine side chain. Thus, the presence of either of these tripeptide sequences in a polypeptide creates a potential glycosylation site. O-linked glycosylation refers to the attachment of one of the sugars N-acetylglucosamine, galactose, or xylose to a hydroxyamino acid, most commonly serine or threonine, although 5-hydroxyproline or 5-hydroxylysine may also be used.

Glycosylation variants of antibodies are variants in which the glycosylation pattern of an antibody is altered. By altering is meant deleting one or more carbohydrate moieties found in the antibody, adding one or more carbohydrate moieties to the antibody, changing the composition of glycosylation (glycosylation pattern), the extent of glycosylation, etc.

Addition of glycosylation sites to the antibody is conveniently accomplished by altering the amino acid sequence such that it contains one or more of the above-described tripeptide sequences (for N-linked glycosylation sites). The alteration may also be made by the addition of, or substitution by, one or more serine or threonine residues to the sequence of the original antibody (for O-linked glycosylation sites). Similarly, removal of glycosylation sites can be accomplished by amino acid alteration within the native glycosylation sites of the antibody.

The amino acid sequence is usually altered by altering the underlying nucleic acid sequence. Nucleic acid molecules encoding amino acid sequence variants of the anti-ErbB2 antibody are prepared by a variety of methods known in the art. These methods include, but are not limited to, isolation from a natural source (in the case of naturally occurring amino acid sequence variants) or preparation by oligonucleotide-mediated (or site-directed) mutagenesis, PCR mutagenesis, and cassette mutagenesis of an earlier prepared variant or a non-variant version of the anti-ErbB2 antibody.

The glycosylation (including glycosylation pattern) of antibodies may also be altered without altering the amino acid sequence or the underlying nucleotide sequence. Glycosylation largely depends on the host cell used to express the antibody. Since the cell type used for expression of recombinant glycoproteins, e.g. antibodies, as potential therapeutics is rarely the native cell, significant variations in the glycosylation pattern of the antibodies can be expected (see, e.g. Hse et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:9062-9070 [1997]). In addition to the choice of host cells, factors which affect glycosylation during recombinant production of antibodies include growth mode, media formulation, culture density, oxygenation, pH, purification schemes and the like. Various methods have been proposed to alter the glycosylation pattern achieved in a particular host organism including introducing or overexpressing certain enzymes involved in oligosaccharide production (U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,047,335; 5,510,261 and 5,278,299). Glycosylation, or certain types of glycosylation, can be enzymatically removed from the glycoprotein, for example using endoglycosidase H (Endo H). In addition, the recombinant host cell can be genetically engineered, e.g. make defective in processing certain types of polysaccharides. These and similar techniques are well known in the art.

The glycosylation structure of antibodies can be readily analyzed by conventional techniques of carbohydrate analysis, including lectin chromatography, NMR, Mass spectrometry, HPLC, GPC, monosaccharide compositional analysis, sequential enzymatic digestion, and HPAEC-PAD, which uses high pH anion exchange chromatography to separate oligosaccharides based on charge. Methods for releasing oligosaccharides for analytical purposes are also known, and include, without limitation, enzymatic treatment (commonly performed using peptide-N-glycosidase F/endo- β -galactosidase), elimination using harsh alkaline environment to release mainly O-linked structures, and chemical methods using anhydrous hydrazine to release both N- and O-linked oligosaccharides.

(viii) Screening for Antibodies with the Desired Properties

Techniques for generating antibodies have been described above. One may further select antibodies with certain biological characteristics, as desired.

For example, to identify growth inhibitory anti-ErbB2 antibodies, one may screen for antibodies which inhibit the growth of cancer cells which overexpress ErbB2. In one embodiment, the growth inhibitory antibody of choice is able to inhibit growth of SK-BR-3 cells in cell culture by about 20-100% and preferably by about 50-100% at an antibody concentration of about 0.5 to 30 $\mu\text{g/ml}$. To identify such antibodies, the SK-BR-3 assay described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,677,171 can be performed. According to this assay, SK-BR-3 cells are grown in a 1:1 mixture of F12 and DMEM medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum, glutamine and penicillin streptomycin. The SK-BR-3 cells are plated at 20,000 cells in a 35 mm cell culture dish (2 mls/35 mm dish). 0.5 to 30 $\mu\text{g/ml}$ of the anti-ErbB2 antibody is added per dish. After six days, the number of cells, compared to untreated cells are counted using an electronic COULTER™ cell counter. Those antibodies which inhibit growth of the SK-BR-3 cells by about 20-100% or about 50-100% may be selected as growth inhibitory antibodies.

To select for antibodies which induce cell death, loss of membrane integrity as indicated by, e.g., PI, trypan blue or 7AAD uptake may be assessed relative to control. The preferred assay is the PI uptake assay using BT474 cells. According to this assay, BT474 cells (which can be obtained from the American Type Culture Collection (Rockville, Md.)) are cultured in Dulbecco's Modified Eagle Medium (D-MEM): Ham's F-12 (50:50) supplemented with 10% heat-inactivated FBS (Hyclhone) and 2 mM L-glutamine. (Thus, the assay is performed in the absence of complement and immune effector cells). The BT474 cells are seeded at a density of 3×10^6 per dish in 100 \times 20 mm dishes and allowed to attach overnight. The medium is then removed and replaced with fresh medium alone or medium containing 10 $\mu\text{g/ml}$ of the appropriate monoclonal antibody. The cells are incubated for a 3 day time period. Following each treatment, monolayers are washed with PBS and detached by trypsinization. Cells are then centrifuged at 1200 rpm for 5 minutes at 4° C., the pellet resuspended in 3 ml ice cold Ca^{2+} binding buffer (10 mM Hepes, pH 7.4, 140 mM NaCl, 2.5 mM CaCl_2) and aliquoted into 35 mm strainer-capped 12 \times 75 tubes (1 ml per tube, 3 tubes per treatment group) for removal of cell clumps. Tubes then receive PI (10 $\mu\text{g/ml}$). Samples may be analyzed using a FACSCAN™ flow cytometer and FACSCONVERT™ CellQuest software (Becton Dickinson). Those antibodies which induce statistically significant levels of cell death as determined by PI uptake may be selected as cell death-inducing antibodies.

In order to select for antibodies which induce apoptosis, an annexin binding assay using BT474 cells is available. The BT474 cells are cultured and seeded in dishes as discussed in the preceding paragraph. The medium is then removed and replaced with fresh medium alone or medium containing 10 $\mu\text{g/ml}$ of the monoclonal antibody. Following a three day incubation period, monolayers are washed with PBS and detached by trypsinization. Cells are then centrifuged, resuspended in Ca^{2+} binding buffer and aliquoted into tubes as discussed above for the cell death assay. Tubes then receive labeled annexin (e.g. annexin V-FTIC) (1 $\mu\text{g/ml}$). Samples may be analyzed using a FACSCAN™ flow cytometer and FACSCONVERT™ CellQuest software (Becton Dickinson). Those antibodies which induce statistically significant levels of annexin binding relative to control are selected as apoptosis-inducing antibodies.

In addition to the annexin binding assay, a DNA staining assay using BT474 cells is available. In order to perform this assay, BT474 cells which have been treated with the antibody of interest as described in the preceding two paragraphs are

incubated with 9 $\mu\text{g/ml}$ HOECHST 33342™ for 2 hr at 37° C., then analyzed on an EPICS ELITE™ flow cytometer (Coulter Corporation) using MODFIT LT™ software (Verity Software House). Antibodies which induce a change in the percentage of apoptotic cells which is 2 fold or greater (and preferably 3 fold or greater) than untreated cells (up to 100% apoptotic cells) may be selected as pro-apoptotic antibodies using this assay.

To identify an antibody which blocks ligand activation of an ErbB receptor, the ability of the antibody to block ErbB ligand binding to cells expressing the ErbB receptor (e.g. in conjugation with another ErbB receptor with which the ErbB receptor of interest forms an ErbB hetero-oligomer) may be determined. For example, cells naturally expressing, or transfected to express, ErbB receptors of the ErbB hetero-oligomer may be incubated with the antibody and then exposed to labeled ErbB ligand. The ability of the anti-ErbB2 antibody to block ligand binding to the ErbB receptor in the ErbB hetero-oligomer may then be evaluated.

For example, inhibition of HRG binding to MCF7 breast tumor cell lines by anti-ErbB2 antibodies may be performed using monolayer MCF7 cultures on ice in a 24-well-plate format essentially as described in Example 1 below. Anti-ErbB2 monoclonal antibodies may be added to each well and incubated for 30 minutes. ^{125}I -labeled rHRG $\beta 1_{177-224}$ (25 pm) may then be added, and the incubation may be continued for 4 to 16 hours. Dose response curves may be prepared and an IC_{50} value may be calculated for the antibody of interest. In one embodiment, the antibody which blocks ligand activation of an ErbB receptor will have an IC_{50} for inhibiting HRG binding to MCF7 cells in this assay of about 50 nM or less, more preferably 10 nM or less. Where the antibody is an antibody fragment such as a Fab fragment, the IC_{50} for inhibiting HRG binding to MCF7 cells in this assay may, for example, be about 100 nM or less, more preferably 50 nM or less.

Alternatively, or additionally, the ability of the anti-ErbB2 antibody to block ErbB ligand-stimulated tyrosine phosphorylation of an ErbB receptor present in an ErbB hetero-oligomer may be assessed. For example, cells endogenously expressing the ErbB receptors or transfected to express them may be incubated with the antibody and then assayed for ErbB ligand-dependent tyrosine phosphorylation activity using an anti-phosphotyrosine monoclonal (which is optionally conjugated with a detectable label). The kinase receptor activation assay described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,766,863 is also available for determining ErbB receptor activation and blocking of that activity by an antibody.

In one embodiment, one may screen for an antibody which inhibits HRG stimulation of p180 tyrosine phosphorylation in MCF7 cells. For example, the MCF7 cells may be plated in 24-well plates and monoclonal antibodies to ErbB2 may be added to each well and incubated for 30 minutes at room temperature; then rHRG $\beta 1_{177-244}$ may be added to each well to a final concentration of 0.2 nM, and the incubation may be continued for 8 minutes. Media may be aspirated from each well, and reactions may be stopped by the addition of 100 μl of SDS sample buffer (5% SDS, 25 mM DTT, and 25 mM Tris-HCl, pH 6.8). Each sample (25 μl) may be electrophoresed on a 4-12% gradient gel (Novex) and then electrophoretically transferred to polyvinylidene difluoride membrane. Antiphosphotyrosine (at 1 $\mu\text{g/ml}$) immunoblots may be developed, and the intensity of the predominant reactive band at $M_r \sim 180,000$ may be quantified by reflectance densitometry. The antibody selected will preferably significantly inhibit HRG stimulation of p180 tyrosine phosphorylation to about 0-35% of control in this assay. A dose-response curve

for inhibition of HRG stimulation of p180 tyrosine phosphorylation as determined by reflectance densitometry may be prepared and an IC_{50} for the antibody of interest may be calculated. In one embodiment, the antibody which blocks ligand activation of an ErbB receptor will have an IC_{50} for inhibiting HRG stimulation of p180 tyrosine phosphorylation in this assay of about 50 nM or less, more preferably 10 nM or less. Where the antibody is an antibody fragment such as a Fab fragment, the IC_{50} for inhibiting HRG stimulation of p180 tyrosine phosphorylation in this assay may, for example, be about 100 nM or less, more preferably 50 nM or less.

One may also assess the growth inhibitory effects of the antibody on MDA-MB-175 cells, e.g. essentially as described in Schaefer et al. *Oncogene* 15:1385-1394 (1997). According to this assay, MDA-MB-175 cells may be treated with an anti-ErbB2 monoclonal antibody (10 μ g/mL) for 4 days and stained with crystal violet. Incubation with an anti-ErbB2 antibody may show a growth inhibitory effect on this cell line similar to that displayed by monoclonal antibody 2C4. In a further embodiment, exogenous HRG will not significantly reverse this inhibition. Preferably, the antibody will be able to inhibit cell proliferation of MDA-MB-175 cells to a greater extent than monoclonal antibody 4D5 (and optionally to a greater extent than monoclonal antibody 7F3), both in the presence and absence of exogenous HRG.

In one embodiment, the anti-ErbB2 antibody of interest may block heregulin dependent association of ErbB2 with ErbB3 in both MCF7 and SK-BR-3 cells as determined in a co-immunoprecipitation experiment substantially more effectively than monoclonal antibody 4D5, and preferably substantially more effectively than monoclonal antibody 7F3.

To screen for antibodies which bind to an epitope on ErbB2 bound by an antibody of interest, a routine cross-blocking assay such as that described in *Antibodies, A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Ed Harlow and David Lane (1988), can be performed. Alternatively, or additionally, epitope mapping can be performed by methods known in the art (see, e.g. FIGS. 1A and 1B herein).

The results obtained in the cell-based assays described above can then be followed by testing in animal, e.g. murine, models, and human clinical trials. In particular, the inability or limited ability of an antibody to treat ErbB2 overexpressing tumors can be demonstrated in the transgenic mouse model disclosed in the present application as described in the Examples below.

B. Anti-ErbB Antibody-Maytansinoid Conjugates (Immunoconjugates)

Anti-ErbB antibody-maytansinoid conjugates are prepared by chemically linking an anti-ErbB antibody to a maytansinoid molecule without significantly diminishing the biological activity of either the antibody or the maytansinoid molecule. Maytansinoids are well known in the art and can be synthesized by known techniques or isolated from natural sources. Suitable maytansinoids are disclosed, for example, in U.S. Pat. No. 5,208,020 and in the other patents and non-patent publications referred to hereinabove. Preferred maytansinoids are maytansinol and maytansinol analogues modified in the aromatic ring or at other positions of the maytansinol molecule, such as various maytansinol esters.

There are many linking groups known in the art for making antibody-maytansinoid conjugates, including, for example, those disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,208,020 (e.g., at column 7, lines 55-67 and at column 8, lines 1-14), or EP Patent 0 425 235 B1, and Chari et al. *Cancer Research* 52: 127-131 (1992). The linking groups include disulfide groups, thioether groups, acid labile groups, photolabile groups, peptidase

labile groups, or esterase labile groups, as disclosed in the above-identified patents, disulfide and thioether groups being preferred. For example, for a compound as illustrated in FIG. 3, "R" may be SH or may be SSR_1 , where R_1 represents methyl, linear alkyl, branched alkyl, cyclic alkyl, simple or substituted aryl or heterocyclic.

In addition, there are many possible sites within the antibody molecule for linking maytansinoid to the antibody. For example, in one embodiment HERCEPTIN® can be linked to the maytansinoid at lysine 13 in the light chain, at lysine 32 in the heavy chain, at lysine 26 in both Fab fragments and at lysine 38 in the Fc fragment.

Conjugates of the antibody and maytansinoid may be made using a variety of bifunctional protein coupling agents such as N-succinimidyl-3-(2-pyridyldithio)propionate (SPDP), succinimidyl-4-(N-maleimidomethyl)cyclohexane-1-carboxylate, iminothiolane (IT), bifunctional derivatives of imidoesters (such as dimethyl adipimidate HCL), active esters (such as disuccinimidyl suberate), aldehydes (such as glutaraldehyde), bis-azido compounds (such as bis (p-azidobenzoyl)hexanediamine), bis-diazoniumderivatives (such as bis-(p-diazoniumbenzoyl)-ethylenediamine), diisocyanates (such as toluene 2,6-diisocyanate), and bis-active fluorine compounds (such as 1,5-difluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene). Particularly preferred coupling agents include N-succinimidyl-3-(2-pyridyldithio)propionate (SPDP) (Carlsson et al., *Biochem. J.* 173:723-737 [1978]) and N-succinimidyl-4-(2-pyridyldithio)pentanoate (SPP) to provide for a disulfide linkage.

The linker may be attached to the maytansinoid molecule at various positions, depending on the type of the link. For example, an ester linkage may be formed by reaction with a hydroxyl group using conventional coupling techniques. The reaction may occur at the C-3 position having a hydroxyl group, the C-14 position modified with hydroxymethyl, the C-15 position modified with a hydroxyl group, and the C-20 position having a hydroxyl group. In a preferred embodiment, the linkage is formed at the C-3 position of maytansinol or a maytansinol analogue.

C. Pharmaceutical Formulations

Therapeutic formulations of the antibody-maytansinoid conjugates used in accordance with the present invention are prepared for storage by mixing an antibody having the desired degree of purity with optional pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients or stabilizers (*Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 16th edition, Osol, A. Ed. (1980)), in the form of lyophilized formulations or aqueous solutions. Acceptable carriers, excipients, or stabilizers are nontoxic to recipients at the dosages and concentrations employed, and include buffers such as phosphate, citrate, and other organic acids; antioxidants including ascorbic acid and methionine; preservatives (such as octadecyldimethylbenzyl ammonium chloride; hexamethonium chloride; benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride; phenol, butyl or benzyl alcohol; alkyl parabens such as methyl or propyl paraben; catechol; resorcinol; cyclohexanol; 3-pentanol; and m-cresol); low molecular weight (less than about 10 residues) polypeptides; proteins, such as serum albumin, gelatin, or immunoglobulins; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylpyrrolidone; amino acids such as glycine, glutamine, asparagine, histidine, arginine, or lysine; monosaccharides, disaccharides, and other carbohydrates including glucose, mannose, or dextrans; chelating agents such as EDTA; sugars such as sucrose, mannitol, trehalose or sorbitol; salt-forming counter-ions such as sodium; metal complexes (e.g. Zn-protein complexes); and/or non-ionic surfactants such as TWEEN™, PLURONIC™ or polyethylene glycol (PEG). Preferred lyophilized anti-ErbB2

antibody formulations are described in WO 97/04801, expressly incorporated herein by reference.

The formulation herein may also contain more than one active compound as necessary for the particular indication being treated, preferably those with complementary activities that do not adversely affect each other. For example, it may be desirable to further provide antibodies or antibody-maytansinoid conjugates which bind to EGFR, ErbB2 (e.g. an antibody which binds a different epitope on ErbB2), ErbB3, ErbB4, or vascular endothelial factor (VEGF) in the one formulation. Alternatively, or additionally, the composition may further comprise a chemotherapeutic agent, cytotoxic agent, cytokine, growth inhibitory agent, anti-hormonal agent, and/or cardioprotectant. Such molecules are suitably present in combination in amounts that are effective for the purpose intended.

The active ingredients may also be entrapped in microcapsules prepared, for example, by coacervation techniques or by interfacial polymerization, for example, hydroxymethylcellulose or gelatin-microcapsules and poly-(methylmethacrylate) microcapsules, respectively, in colloidal drug delivery systems (for example, liposomes, albumin microspheres, microemulsions, nano-particles and nanocapsules) or in macroemulsions. Such techniques are disclosed in *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 16th edition, Osol, A. Ed. (1980).

Sustained-release preparations may be prepared. Suitable examples of sustained-release preparations include semipermeable matrices of solid hydrophobic polymers containing the antibody, which matrices are in the form of shaped articles, e.g. films, or microcapsules. Examples of sustained-release matrices include polyesters, hydrogels (for example, poly(2-hydroxyethyl-methacrylate), or poly(vinylalcohol)), polylactides (U.S. Pat. No. 3,773,919), copolymers of L-glutamic acid and γ ethyl-L-glutamate, non-degradable ethylene-vinyl acetate, degradable lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymers such as the LUPRON DEPOT™ (injectable microspheres composed of lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymer and leuprolide acetate), and poly-D-(-)-3-hydroxybutyric acid.

The formulations to be used for in vivo administration must be sterile. This is readily accomplished by filtration through sterile filtration membranes.

In one embodiment, the formulation comprises 5 mg/ml HERCEPTIN®-DM1, 100 mg/ml sucrose, 0.1% polysorbate 20 and 10 mM sodium succinate at pH 5.0.

D. Treatment with the Anti-ErbB2 Antibody-Maytansinoid Conjugates

It is contemplated that, according to the present invention, the anti-ErbB2 antibody-maytansinoid conjugates may be used to treat various diseases or disorders. Exemplary conditions or disorders include benign or malignant tumors; leukemias and lymphoid malignancies; other disorders such as neuronal, glial, astrocytic, hypothalamic, glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal, blastocoelic, inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic disorders.

Generally, the disease or disorder to be treated is cancer. Examples of cancer to be treated herein include, but are not limited to, carcinoma, lymphoma, blastoma, sarcoma, and leukemia or lymphoid malignancies. More particular examples of such cancers include squamous cell cancer (e.g. epithelial squamous cell cancer), lung cancer including small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, adenocarcinoma of the lung and squamous carcinoma of the lung, cancer of the peritoneum, hepatocellular cancer, gastric or stomach cancer including gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, breast cancer, colon can-

cer, rectal cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial or uterine carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney or renal cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma, anal carcinoma, penile carcinoma, as well as head and neck cancer.

The cancer will comprise ErbB-expressing cells, such that an anti-ErbB antibody herein is able to bind to the cancer, and will be typically characterized by overexpression of the ErbB receptor. In a preferred embodiment, the cancer comprises ErbB2-expressing cells, even more preferably, cells which are characterized by overexpression of the ErbB2 receptor. To determine ErbB, e.g. ErbB2 expression in the cancer, various diagnostic/prognostic assays are available. In one embodiment, ErbB2 overexpression may be analyzed by IHC, e.g. using the HERCEPTEST® (Dako). Paraffin embedded tissue sections from a tumor biopsy may be subjected to the IHC assay and accorded a ErbB2 protein staining intensity criteria as follows:

Score 0

no staining is observed or membrane staining is observed in less than 10% of tumor cells.

Score 1+

a faint/barely perceptible membrane staining is detected in more than 10% of the tumor cells.

The cells are only stained in part of their membrane.

Score 2+

a weak to moderate complete membrane staining is observed in more than 10% of the tumor cells.

Score 3+

a moderate to strong complete membrane staining is observed in more than 10% of the tumor cells.

Those tumors with 0 or 1+ scores for ErbB2 overexpression assessment may be characterized as not overexpressing ErbB2, whereas those tumors with 2+ or 3+ scores may be characterized as overexpressing ErbB2.

Alternatively, or additionally, fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) assays such as the INFORM™ (sold by Ventana, Ariz.) or PATHVISION™ (Vysis, Ill.) may be carried out on formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded tumor tissue to determine the extent (if any) of ErbB2 overexpression in the tumor. In comparison with IHC assay, the FISH assay, which measures her2 gene amplification, seems to correlate better with response of patients to treatment with HERCEPTIN®, and is currently considered to be the preferred assay to identify patients likely to benefit from HERCEPTIN® treatment or treatment with the immunoconjugates of the present invention.

In one embodiment, the cancer will be one which expresses (and may overexpress) EGFR. Examples of cancers which may express/overexpress EGFR include squamous cell cancer (e.g. epithelial squamous cell cancer), lung cancer including small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, adenocarcinoma of the lung and squamous carcinoma of the lung, cancer of the peritoneum, hepatocellular cancer, gastric or stomach cancer including gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, breast cancer, colon cancer, rectal cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial or uterine carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney or renal cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma, anal carcinoma, penile carcinoma, as well as head and neck cancer.

Preferably, the immunoconjugates of the present invention and/or ErbB, e.g. ErbB2 or EGFR protein to which they are bound are internalized by the cell, resulting in increased therapeutic efficacy of the immunoconjugate in killing the cancer cell to which they bind. In a preferred embodiment, the

cytotoxic agent (maytansinoid) targets or interferes with nucleic acid in the cancer cell.

The treatment of the present invention targets ErbB over-expressing tumors that do not respond, or respond poorly, to treatment with an unconjugated anti-ErbB antibody. Such patients might have received prior treatment with an anti-ErbB antibody not conjugated to a maytansinoid moiety, where the prior treatment either did not result in significant improvement, or resulted in transient response. Prior treatment of any particular patient with an unconjugated anti-ErbB antibody is, however, not a prerequisite of identifying patients who are candidates for treatment in accordance with the present invention. An ordinary skilled physician can readily identify patients who are expected to benefit from treatment with the immunoconjugates of the present invention based on publicly available clinical data and his or her own experience. Treatment of mammals, and in particular human patients, with or without prior treatment with an (unconjugated) anti-ErbB antibody is specifically within the scope of the present invention.

The anti-ErbB antibody-maytansinoid conjugates are administered to a mammal, preferably to a human patient in accord with known methods, such as intravenous administration, e.g., as a bolus or by continuous infusion over a period of time, by intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intracerebrospinal, subcutaneous, intra-articular, intrasynovial, intrathecal, oral, topical, or inhalation routes. Intravenous or subcutaneous administration of the antibody is preferred.

Other therapeutic regimens may be combined with the administration of the anti-ErbB antibody-maytansinoid conjugates. The combined administration includes coadministration, using separate formulations or a single pharmaceutical formulation, and consecutive administration in either order, wherein preferably there is a time period while both (or all) active agents simultaneously exert their biological activities.

In one preferred embodiment, the patient is treated with two or more different anti-ErbB antibodies, at least one of which is in the form of a maytansinoid conjugate. For example, the patient may be treated with a first anti-ErbB2 antibody-maytansinoid conjugate in which the antibody is growth inhibitory (e.g. HERCEPTIN®), and a second anti-ErbB2 antibody or antibody-immunoconjugate, e.g. an antibody-maytansinoid conjugate which blocks ligand activation of an ErbB receptor (e.g. 2C4 or a humanized and/or affinity matured variant thereof) or induces apoptosis of an ErbB2-overexpressing cell (e.g. 7C2, 7F3 or humanized variants thereof). In another embodiment, the treatment involves the administration of antibodies that specifically bind two or more different ErbB receptors, such as, for example, ErbB2 and EGFR receptors, where at least one of the anti-ErbB antibodies is administered as a maytansinoid conjugate. Preferably such combined therapy results in a synergistic therapeutic effect.

It may also be desirable to combine administration of the anti-ErbB antibody-maytansinoid conjugates, with administration of an antibody directed against another tumor-associated antigen, which is not member of the ErbB family of receptors. The other antibody in this case may, for example, bind to vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), and may be in the form of a maytansinoid conjugate, or another immunoconjugate.

In one embodiment, the treatment of the present invention involves the combined administration of an anti-ErbB2 antibody-maytansinoid conjugate (or conjugates) and one or more chemotherapeutic agents or growth inhibitory agents, including coadministration of cocktails of different chemotherapeutic agents. Preferred chemotherapeutic agents

include taxanes (such as paclitaxel and doxorubicin) and/or anthracycline antibiotics. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapeutic agents may be used according to manufacturers' instructions or as determined empirically by the skilled practitioner. Preparation and dosing schedules for such chemotherapy are also described in *Chemotherapy Service Ed.*, M. C. Perry, Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore, Md. (1992).

In a preferred embodiment, the treatment is initiated with an anti-ErbB antibody-maytansinoid conjugate, followed by maintenance treatment with an unconjugated or 'naked' anti-ErbB antibody. This strategy may eliminate or reduce tumor cells resistant to the naked antibody in the initial round because of the ability of the antibody-DM1 conjugate to effectively kill such tumor cells.

The antibody-maytansinoid conjugates may be combined with an anti-hormonal compound; e.g., an anti-estrogen compound such as tamoxifen; an anti-progesterone such as onapristone (see, EP 616 812); or an anti-androgen such as flutamide, in dosages known for such molecules. Where the cancer to be treated is hormone independent cancer, the patient may previously have been subjected to anti-hormonal therapy and, after the cancer becomes hormone independent, the anti-ErbB2 antibody (and optionally other agents as described herein) may be administered to the patient.

Sometimes, it may be beneficial to also coadminister a cardioprotectant (to prevent or reduce myocardial dysfunction associated with the therapy) or one or more cytokines to the patient. In addition to the above therapeutic regimens, the patient may be subjected to surgical removal of cancer cells and/or radiation therapy.

Suitable dosages for any of the above coadministered agents are those presently used and may be lowered due to the combined action (synergy) of the agent and anti-ErbB2 antibody.

For the prevention or treatment of disease, the appropriate dosage of antibody-maytansinoid conjugates will depend on the type of disease to be treated, as defined above, the severity and course of the disease, whether the antibody is administered for preventive or therapeutic purposes, previous therapy, the patient's clinical history and response to the antibody, and the discretion of the attending physician. The antibody-maytansinoid conjugate is suitably administered to the patient at one time or over a series of treatments. Depending on the type and severity of the disease, about 1 µg/kg to 15 mg/kg (e.g. 0.1-20 mg/kg) of antibody-maytansinoid conjugate is an initial candidate dosage for administration to the patient, whether, for example, by one or more separate administrations, or by continuous infusion. A typical daily dosage might range from about 1 µg/kg to 100 mg/kg or more, depending on the factors mentioned above. For repeated administrations over several days or longer, depending on the condition, the treatment is sustained until a desired suppression of disease symptoms occurs. A preferred dosing regimen comprises administering an initial loading dose of about 4 mg/kg, followed by a weekly maintenance dose of about 2 mg/kg of the anti-ErbB2 antibody-maytansinoid conjugate. However, other dosage regimens may be useful. The progress of this therapy is easily monitored by conventional techniques and assays.

Based on the data disclosed herein, it is anticipated that one useful dosing protocol may entail approximately weekly (or less frequent) administration of the anti-ErbB antibody-maytansinoid conjugate where each dose of the conjugate is about 0.2-10 mg/kg, preferably about 1-3 mg/kg of the conjugate (e.g. where there are 1 to about 10, preferably about 3-4, maytansinoid molecules conjugated to each antibody mol-

ecule). From about 2-10, preferably about 4-6, dosages of the conjugate may be administered to the patient approximately every week.

In a preferred embodiment, the patients are treated initially with anti-ErbB-maytansinoid conjugate followed by therapy with unconjugated anti-ErbB antibody. Preferably, the anti-ErbB antibody in the conjugate and the unconjugated antibody are the same antibody. For example, treatment could be initiated with weekly injections of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 at about 0.5-5 mg/kg, preferably at about 1-3 mg/kg for 4-6 weeks, with the option of repeating this treatment. Patients can then be rolled over to conventional HERCEPTIN® therapy, which typically consists of treatment with a 4 mg/kg initial dose of HERCEPTIN®, followed by weekly treatment with a maintenance dose of 2 mg/kg. However, the 4 mg/kg initial dose may be omitted, with therapy going straight to the 2 mg/kg maintenance dose.

E. Articles of Manufacture

In another embodiment of the invention, an article of manufacture containing materials useful for the treatment of the disorders described above is provided. The article of manufacture comprises a container and a label or package insert on or associated with the container. Suitable containers include, for example, bottles, vials, syringes, etc. The containers may be formed from a variety of materials such as glass or plastic. The container holds a composition which is effective for treating the condition and may have a sterile access port (for example the container may be an intravenous solution bag or a vial having a stopper pierceable by a hypodermic injection needle). At least one active agent in the composition is an anti-ErbB2 antibody-maytansinoid conjugate. In one embodiment the container is a 10 cc vial containing 10 mL of a solution comprising HERCEPTIN®-DM1.

The label or package insert indicates that the composition is used for treating the condition of choice, such as cancer. In one embodiment, the label or package inserts indicates that the composition comprising the antibody which binds ErbB2 can be used to treat cancer which expresses an ErbB receptor selected from the group consisting of epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), ErbB2, ErbB3 and ErbB4, preferably EGFR. In addition, the label or package insert may indicate that the patient to be treated is one having cancer characterized by excessive activation of an ErbB receptor selected from EGFR, ErbB2, ErbB3 or ErbB4. For example, the cancer may be one which overexpresses one of these receptors and/or which overexpresses an ErbB ligand (such as TGF- α). The label or package insert may also indicate that the composition can be used to treat cancer, wherein the cancer is not characterized by overexpression of the ErbB2 receptor. For example, whereas the present package insert for HERCEPTIN® indicates that the antibody is used to treat patients with metastatic breast cancer whose tumors overexpress the ErbB2 protein, the package insert herein may indicate that the antibody or composition is used to treat cancer that does not respond, or respond poorly, to treatment with HERCEPTIN®. In other embodiments, the package insert may indicate that the antibody-maytansinoid conjugate or composition can be used also to treat hormone independent cancer, prostate cancer, colon cancer or colorectal cancer.

Moreover, the article of manufacture may comprise (a) a first container with a composition contained therein, wherein the composition comprises a maytansinoid conjugate of a first antibody which binds ErbB2 and inhibits growth of cancer cells which overexpress ErbB2; and (b) a second container with a composition contained therein, wherein the composition comprises a second antibody which binds ErbB2 and blocks ligand activation of an ErbB receptor, or a conjugate of

this second antibody with a maytansinoid. The article of manufacture in this embodiment of the invention may further comprise a package insert indicating that the first and second compositions can be used to treat cancer. Alternatively, or additionally, the article of manufacture may further comprise a second (or third) container comprising a pharmaceutically-acceptable buffer, such as bacteriostatic water for injection (BWFJ), phosphate-buffered saline, Ringer's solution and dextrose solution. It may further include other materials desirable from a commercial and user standpoint, including other buffers, diluents, filters, needles, and syringes.

Further details of the invention are illustrated in the following non-limiting examples.

EXAMPLE 1

Production, Characterization and Humanization of Anti-ErbB2 Monoclonal Antibody 4D5

The murine monoclonal antibody 4D5 which specifically binds the extracellular domain of ErbB2 was produced as described in Fendly et al., *Cancer Research* 50:1550-1558 (1990). Briefly, NIH 3T3/HER2-3₄₀₀ cells (expressing approximately 1×10^5 ErbB2 molecules/cell) produced as described in Hudziak et al *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. (USA)* 84:7158-7163 (1987) were harvested with phosphate buffered saline (PBS) containing 25 mM EDTA and used to immunize BALB/c mice. The mice were given injections i.p. of 10^7 cells in 0.5 ml PBS on weeks 0, 2, 5 and 7. The mice with antisera that immunoprecipitated ³²P-labeled ErbB2 were given i.p. injections of a wheat germ agglutinin-Sepharose (WGA) purified ErbB2 membrane extract on weeks 9 and 13. This was followed by an i.v. injection of 0.1 ml of the ErbB2 preparation and the splenocytes were fused with mouse myeloma line X63-Ag8.653. Hybridoma supernatants were screened for ErbB2-binding by ELISA and radioimmunoprecipitation.

Epitope Mapping and Characterization

The ErbB2 epitope bound by monoclonal antibody 4D5 was determined by competitive binding analysis (Fendly et al. *Cancer Research* 50:1550-1558 (1990)). Cross-blocking studies were done by direct fluorescence on intact cells using the PANDEX™ Screen Machine to quantitate fluorescence. The monoclonal antibody was conjugated with fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), using established procedures (Wofsy et al. *Selected Methods in Cellular Immunology*, p. 287, Mishel and Schiigi (eds.) San Francisco: W.J. Freeman Co. (1980)). Confluent monolayers of NIH 3T3/HER2-3₄₀₀ cells were trypsinized, washed once, and resuspended at 1.75×10^6 cell/ml in cold PBS containing 0.5% bovine serum albumin (BSA) and 0.1% NaN₃. A final concentration of 1% latex particles (IDC, Portland, Oreg.) was added to reduce clogging of the PANDEX™ plate membranes. Cells in suspension, 20 μ l, and 20 μ l of purified monoclonal antibodies (100 μ g/ml to 0.1 μ g/ml) were added to the PANDEX™ plate wells and incubated on ice for 30 minutes. A predetermined dilution of the FITC-labeled monoclonal antibody in 20 μ l was added to each well, incubated for 30 minutes, washed, and the fluorescence was quantitated by the PANDEX™. Monoclonal antibodies were considered to share an epitope if each blocked binding of the other by 50% or greater in comparison to an irrelevant monoclonal antibody control. In this experiment, monoclonal antibody 4D5 was assigned epitope I (amino acid residues from about 529 to about 625, inclusive within the ErbB2 extracellular domain (see SEQ ID NO: 3).

The growth inhibitory characteristics of monoclonal antibody 4D5 were evaluated using the breast tumor cell line,

SK-BR-3 (see Hudziak et al. *Molec. Cell. Biol.* 9(3):1165-1172 (1989)). Briefly, SK-BR-3 cells were detached by using 0.25% (vol/vol) trypsin and suspended in complete medium at a density of 4×10^5 cells per ml. Aliquots of 100 μ l (4×10^4 cells) were plated into 96-well microdilution plates, the cells were allowed to adhere, and 100 μ l of media alone or media containing monoclonal antibody (final concentration 5 μ g/ml) was then added. After 72 hours, plates were washed twice with PBS (pH 7.5), stained with crystal violet (0.5% in methanol), and analyzed for relative cell proliferation as described in Sugarman et al. *Science* 230:943-945 (1985). Monoclonal antibody 4D5 inhibited SK-BR-3 relative cell proliferation by about 56%.

Monoclonal antibody 4D5 was also evaluated for its ability to inhibit HRG-stimulated tyrosine phosphorylation of proteins in the M_r 180,000 range from whole-cell lysates of MCF7 cells (Lewis et al. *Cancer Research* 56:1457-1465 (1996)). MCF7 cells are reported to express all known ErbB receptors, but at relatively low levels. Since ErbB2, ErbB3, and ErbB4 have nearly identical molecular sizes, it is not possible to discern which protein is becoming tyrosine phosphorylated when whole-cell lysates are evaluated by Western blot analysis. However, these cells are ideal for HRG tyrosine phosphorylation assays because under the assay conditions used, in the absence of exogenously added HRG, they exhibit low to undetectable levels of tyrosine phosphorylation proteins in the M_r 180,000 range.

MCF7 cells were plated in 24-well plates and monoclonal antibodies to ErbB2 were added to each well and incubated for 30 minutes at room temperature; then rHRG β ₁¹⁷⁷⁻²⁴⁴ was added to each well to a final concentration of 0.2 nM, and the incubation was continued for 8 minutes. Media was carefully aspirated from each well, and reactions were stopped by the addition of 100 μ l of SDS sample buffer (5% SDS, 25 mM DTT, and 25 mM Tris-HCl, pH 6.8). Each sample (25 μ l) was electrophoresed on a 4-12% gradient gel (Novex) and then electrophoretically transferred to polyvinylidene difluoride membrane. Antiphosphotyrosine (4G10, from UBI, used at 1 μ g/ml) immunoblots were developed, and the intensity of the predominant reactive band at M_r -180,000 was quantified by reflectance densitometry, as described previously (Holmes et al. *Science* 256:1205-1210 (1992); Sliwkowski et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:14661-14665 (1994)).

Monoclonal antibody 4D5 significantly inhibited the generation of a HRG-induced tyrosine phosphorylation signal at M_r 180,000. In the absence of HRG, but was unable to stimulate tyrosine phosphorylation of proteins in the M_r 180,000 range. Also, this antibody does not cross-react with EGFR (Fendly et al. *Cancer Research* 50:1550-1558 (1990)), ErbB3, or ErbB4. Monoclonal antibody 4D5 was able to block HRG stimulation of tyrosine phosphorylation by ~50%.

The growth inhibitory effect of monoclonal antibody 4D5 on MDA-MB-175 and SK-BR-3 cells in the presence or absence of exogenous rHRG β ₁ was assessed (Schaefer et al. *Oncogene* 15:1385-1394 (1997)). ErbB2 levels in MDA-MB-175 cells are 4-6 times higher than the level found in normal breast epithelial cells and the ErbB2-ErbB4 receptor is constitutively tyrosine phosphorylated in MDA-MB-175 cells. Monoclonal antibody 4D5 was able to inhibit cell proliferation of MDA-MB-175 cells, both in the presence and absence of exogenous HRG. Inhibition of cell proliferation by 4D5 is dependent on the ErbB2 expression level (Lewis et al. *Cancer Immunol. Immunother.* 37:255-263 (1993)). A maximum inhibition of 66% in SK-BR-3 cells could be detected. However this effect could be overcome by exogenous HRG.

Humanization

The murine monoclonal antibody 4D5 was humanized, using a novel "gene conversion mutagenesis" strategy, as described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,821,337, the entire disclosure of which is hereby expressly incorporated by reference. The humanized monoclonal antibody 4D5 used in the following experiments is designated huMAB4D5-8. This antibody is of IgG1 isotype.

EXAMPLE 2

HERCEPTIN®-DM1 Conjugates

1. Purification of HERCEPTIN®

HERCEPTIN® (huMAB4D5-8, rhuMAB HER2, U.S. Pat. No. 5,821,337) (1 vial containing 440 mg antibody) was dissolved in 50 mL MES buffer (25 mM MES, 50 mM NaCl, pH 5.6). The sample was loaded on a cation exchange column (Sephacrose S, 15 cm \times 1.7 cm) that had been equilibrated in the same buffer. The column was then washed with the same buffer (5 column volumes). HERCEPTIN® was eluted by raising the NaCl concentration of the buffer to 200 mM. Fractions containing the antibody were pooled, diluted to 10 mg/mL, and dialyzed into a buffer containing 50 mM potassium phosphate, 50 mM NaCl, 2 mM EDTA, pH 6.5.

2. Modification of HERCEPTIN® with SPP

The purified HERCEPTIN® antibody was modified with N-succinimidyl-4-(2-pyridylthio)pentanoate (SPP) to introduce dithiopyridyl groups. The antibody (376.0 mg, 8 mg/mL) in 44.7 mL of 50 mM potassium phosphate buffer (pH 6.5) containing NaCl (50 mM) and EDTA (1 mM) was treated with SPP (5.3 molar equivalents in 2.3 mL ethanol). After incubation for 90 minutes under argon at ambient temperature, the reaction mixture was gel filtered through a Sephadex G25 column equilibrated with 35 mM sodium citrate, 154 mM NaCl, 2 mM EDTA. Antibody containing fractions were pooled and assayed. The degree of modification of the antibody was determined as described above. Recovery of the modified antibody (HERCEPTIN®-SPP-Py) was 337 mg (89.7%) with 4.5 releasable 2-thiopyridine groups linked per antibody.

3. Conjugation of HERCEPTIN®-SPP-Py with DM1

The modified antibody (337.0 mg, 9.5 μ mol of releasable 2-thiopyridine groups) was diluted with the above 35 mM sodium citrate buffer, pH 6.5, to a final concentration of 2.5 mg/mL. DM1 (1.7 equivalents, 16.1 μ mol) in 3.0 mM dimethylacetamide (DMA, 3% v/v in the final reaction mixture) was then added to the antibody solution. The structure of DM1 is shown in FIG. 3, where the nature of the "R" group is not critical and can be occupied, for example, by a variety of groups capable of forming a chemical bond with a linker. DM1 used in the present reaction was stored as an S—S form, which is more stable, and was reduced to the SH form for conjugation with the HERCEPTIN® antibody. The reaction proceeded at ambient temperature under argon for 20 hours. The structure of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugates is illustrated in FIG. 4.

The reaction was loaded on a Sephacryl S300 gel filtration column (5.0 cm \times 90.0 cm, 1.77 L) equilibrated with 35 mM sodium citrate, 154 mM NaCl, pH 6.5. The flow rate was 5.0 mL/min and 65 fractions (20.0 mL each) were collected. A major peak centered around fraction No. 47 (FIG. 5). The major peak comprises monomeric HERCEPTIN®-DM1. Fractions 44-51 were pooled and assayed. The number of DM1 drug molecules linked per antibody molecule was determined by measuring the absorbance at 252 nm and 280 nm, and found to be 3.7 drug molecules per antibody molecule.

4. Anti-Proliferative Effect of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 Conjugate in vitro

SK-BR3 cells, which express 3+ level of HER2 on cell surface, were treated with HERCEPTIN®, HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate, control mAb RITUXAN® or RITUXAN®-DM1 conjugates, and the effect of these treatments on cell proliferation was monitored. As shown in FIG. 6, the extent of cell growth inhibition by treatment with HERCEPTIN®-DM1 was dramatically more pronounced than that with HERCEPTIN®, while the control RITUXAN® antibody did not inhibit cell growth. Although the RITUXAN®-DM1 did inhibit cell growth, it did so only at high concentrations. For example, the RITUXAN®-DM1 conjugate did not inhibit growth at concentration up to 1 µg/ml. In contrast, the HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate was highly potent and significantly inhibited cell growth starting from 0.01 µg/ml and reaching a plateau at 0.1 µg/ml. The RITUXAN®-DM1 conjugate required 100 times higher concentration to achieve the same level of cell growth inhibition as HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate. This is also reflected in a 100-fold difference in IC₅₀ value, concentration required to inhibit cell growth by 50%, of the respective conjugates.

EXAMPLE 3

Transgenic Animals

In order to improve the clinical activity of HERCEPTIN®, a transgenic HER2 mouse model was developed in which novel HER2-directed therapies could be tested preclinically. Tumors arise readily in transgenic mice that express a mutationally activated form of neu, the rat homolog of HER2, but the HER2 that is overexpressed in breast cancers is not mutated and tumor formation is much less robust in transgenic mice that overexpress nonmutated HER2 (Webster et al., *Semin. Cancer Biol.* 5: 69-76 [1994]). To improve tumor formation with nonmutated HER2, a strategy was used to further enhance overexpression of nonmutated HER2 in a transgenic mouse.

Any promoter that promotes expression of HER2 in epithelial cells in the mouse mammary gland can be used in the disclosed constructs. Many of the milk protein genes are transcribed by promoter/enhancer elements that are specifically active in mammary glands. Milk protein genes include those genes encoding caseins (α -S₁ and β), β -lactoglobulin, α -lactalbumin, and whey acidic protein. The ovine β -lactoglobulin promoter is well characterized and widely used in the art (Whitelaw et al., *Biochem J.* 286: 31-39, [1992]). However, similar fragments of promoter DNA from other species are also suitable. A preferred promoter is the promoter derived from the Long Terminal Repeat (LTR) of the Mouse Mammary Tumor Virus (MMTV). A HER2 transgene construct of the present invention was generated using the MMTV LTR promoter.

To improve tumor formation with nonmutated HER2, we have made transgenic mice using a HER2 cDNA plasmid in which an upstream ATG was deleted in order to prevent initiation of translation at such upstream ATG codons, which would otherwise reduce the frequency of translation initiation from the downstream authentic initiation codon of HER2 (for example, see Child et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 274: 24335-24341 [1999]). Additionally, a chimeric intron was added to the 5' end, which should also enhance the level of expression as reported earlier (Neuberger and Williams, *Nucleic Acids Res.* 16: 6713 [1988]; Buchman and Berg, *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 8: 4395 [1988]; Brinster et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85: 836 [1988]). The chimeric intron was derived from a Promega

vector, pCI-neo mammalian expression vector (bp 890-1022). The cDNA 3'-end is flanked by human growth hormone exons 4 and 5, and polyadenylation sequences. Moreover, FVB mice were used because this strain is more susceptible to tumor development. The promoter from MMTV-LTR was used to ensure tissue-specific HER2 expression in the mammary gland. Animals were fed the AIN 76A diet in order to increase susceptibility to tumor formation (Rao et al., *Breast Cancer Res. and Treatment* 45: 149-158 [1997]). The nucleotide sequence of this transgene plasmid construct (SEQ ID NO: 1) is shown in FIG. 7.

Animals suitable for transgenic experiments can be obtained from standard commercial sources such as Taconic (Germantown, N.Y.). Many strains are suitable, but FVB female mice are preferred because of their higher susceptibility to tumor formation. FVB males were used for mating and vasectomized CD.1 studs were used to stimulate pseudopregnancy. Vasectomized mice can be obtained from any commercial supplier. Founders were bred with either FVB mice or with 129/BL6xFVB p53 heterozygous mice. The mice with heterozygosity at p53 allele were used to potentially increase tumor formation. However, this has proven unnecessary. Therefore, some F1 tumors are of mixed strain. Founder tumors are FVB only. Six founders were obtained with some developing tumors without having litters.

EXAMPLE 4

HER2 Transgenic Mouse as a Tumor Model to Evaluate HER2-Directed Therapies

Mammary gland biopsies of one founder transgenic mouse made as described in Example 3, showed 3+ expression of HER2, as determined by immunohistochemical staining, at about 2 months of age. The amount of HER2 extracellular domain (ECD) shed into serum was measured and found to be about 1.2 ng/ml (Huang et al., *supra*). This mouse subsequently developed a mammary tumor at 5 months of age, after bearing 4 litters. The tumor was surgically resected under aseptic conditions and minced into small pieces, 2 mm³, which were then transplanted into the mammary fat pad of wild-type FVB female mice. As can be seen in FIG. 8A, the amount of HER2 ECD shed into serum increased over time following transplant and was found to be directly proportional to the weight of the tumor that developed (FIG. 8B). Tumors developed in 22 of 31 recipient mice, with a latency of 5 weeks. With subsequent passage, tumors developed with shorter latency and grew more rapidly, and tumor incidence increased to >95% of recipients. HER2 expression, as determined by immunohistochemical staining, was 3+ but heterogeneous in the primary tumor, but became uniformly 3+ after the first passage.

Treatment of tumor-bearing mice with HERCEPTIN® or 4D5, the murine antibody from which humanized HERCEPTIN® was derived, had only a modest effect on the growth of the transplanted tumors (FIG. 9). HER2 expression was 3+ in tumors that grew during HERCEPTIN® or 4D5 therapy, indicating that there was no selection of HER2-negative tumors. Moreover, as can be seen in FIG. 10, cy3-HERCEPTIN® was detected decorating tumor cells after injection into tumor-bearing mice, indicating that the lack of efficacy was not due to failure of the antibody to access the tumor. In addition, HER2 appears to be activated in the tumor cells, as evidenced by the binding of an anti-tyrosine phosphorylated HER2 antibody (FIG. 10).

Based on the persistent expression of HER2 and the failure of this tumor model to respond to HERCEPTIN®, a novel

approach was tested, using HERCEPTIN® conjugated to maytansinoid DM1 as described in Example 3. FIG. 9 shows that the HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate has dramatic anti-tumor activity in this model. RITUXAN®, an unrelated anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody, was used as a negative control for these studies. There was little response to HERCEPTIN® compared to the control antibody, RITUXAN®, but there was striking anti-tumor activity of the maytansinoid conjugate of HERCEPTIN®. As shown in FIG. 9, all of the mice treated with HERCEPTIN®-maytansinoid showed striking shrinkage of their tumors, though none of the tumors disappeared. After approximately 4 weeks, tumors began to regrow. Five animals were sacrificed at this time. Their tumors were found to express HER2 at 3+ levels. Thus, there was no selection for HER2-negative tumors. Based on this observation, the remaining 3 mice were treated with HERCEPTIN®-maytansinoid for 5 consecutive days. The tumors again regressed in response to the treatment.

Despite its effectiveness at shrinking tumors and suppressing tumor growth, HERCEPTIN®-DM1 does not kill normal human cells, indicating a selective activity. The effect of various concentrations of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 on human mammary epithelial cells, human hepatocytes and human small airway epithelial cells was investigated. At antibody concentrations of up to 10 µg/ml, the conjugate had no significant effect on cell number.

The pharmacokinetics of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 was evaluated in mice and cynomolgous monkeys. It was determined that the HERCEPTIN®-DM1 pharmacokinetics was linear with respect to dose in both mouse and cynomolgous monkeys following i.v. administration. Dose response analysis in mice indicated that tumor suppression increased with increasing exposure to HERCEPTIN®-DM1 and reached maximum suppression following a dose of at least 18 mg/kg given once a week. The concentration-effect relationship will be further characterized in future studies.

FIG. 11 shows the results of treating mice with HER-2 over-expressing tumors with HERCEPTIN®-DM1 once a week for 5 weeks. Each dose contained 300 µg/kg of DM1 and 18 mg/kg of HERCEPTIN®. Another group of animals received HERCEPTIN® twice a week at a dose of 18 mg/kg body weight. Animals that did not receive any treatment were used as control. As shown in FIG. 11, in animals that received HERCEPTIN®-DM1 tumor size was dramatically controlled and, perhaps more importantly, the tumor size was kept under control even after the therapy was stopped.

In yet another experiment, the amount of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate as well as the frequency of administration were varied while keeping the total number of doses at five. The evaluation was carried out in nude mice containing HER2 tumor transplants in mammary pads. As shown in FIG. 12, some animals received HERCEPTIN®-DM1 at 300, 100, 30 or 10 µg DM1/kg twice a week for the total of 5 doses. Another group of animals received HERCEPTIN®-DM1 at 300 or 100 µg DM1/kg once a week for the total of 5 doses. For comparison, HERCEPTIN® alone was administered at 18 mg/kg twice a week or a control monoclonal antibody (E25 directed against CD20, also known as RITUXAN®) was administered twice a week. Consistent with earlier results in this HERCEPTIN® insensitive model, HERCEPTIN® failed to control the growth of mammary tumors. However, HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate showed dramatic anti-tumor activity in a dose-dependent manner. For example, higher doses showed more potent anti-tumor activity than lower doses in both of the groups, i.e. those receiving treatments twice a week and once a week. Furthermore, twice a week treatment was more effective in keeping the tumor size

smaller than once a week treatment schedule. Interestingly, however, there was no significant difference in the profile of tumor growth inhibition at 300 µg DM1/kg dose of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate whether administered twice a week or once a week. This suggests that at 300 µg DM1/kg dose, once a week schedule of treatment is effective in controlling tumor growth and that a higher frequency of administration is not necessary.

The results of a similar experiment are depicted in FIG. 13. The results of three different dosing regimens of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate on tumor size are shown compared to matching dosing regimens of RITUXAN®-DM1. Tumor size was reduced and tumor growth was suppressed for at least about 50 days by treatment with 5 doses of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 at a concentration of 300 µg DM1/kg. This was true both when the HERCEPTIN®-DM1 was administered once a week and when it was administered twice a week. By contrast, administration of 5 doses of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 twice a week at a concentration of 100 µg DM1/kg did not shrink tumor size and suppressed tumor growth for somewhat less time. Matched RITUXAN®-DM1 treatment showed little effect on tumor size, indicating that the observed effect is specific to HERCEPTIN®-DM1. Similarly, unconjugated RITUXAN® (control MAb E25) showed no efficacy.

As can be seen clearly in FIG. 14, a dose of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 (300 µg DM1/kg) once a week for five weeks caused tumors to shrink and prevented regrowth for more than 60 days. FIG. 14 also shows that a second round of treatment with HERCEPTIN®-DM1 after tumor regrowth begins is capable of shrinking tumors a second time. Neither unconjugated RITUXAN® (control MAb E25) nor RITUXAN®-DM1 had any obvious effect on tumor growth.

As shown here, the mammary tumor transplanted from HER2 transgenic mouse serves as a very useful model in evaluating various anti-tumor compounds as well as in establishing efficacy of different treatment regimens in preclinical studies. The model is particularly unique as it shares an important attribute of a fraction of human mammary tumors which are either completely or partially refractory to the treatment of HERCEPTIN® in spite of overexpression of HER2 at 2+ or 3+ levels. Thus, HER2 transgenic model described herein provides a valuable tool not only to study the mechanism of resistance to the anti-tumor activity of HERCEPTIN®, but also for screening compounds or modified HERCEPTIN®, including conjugates, for anti-tumor activity. The insight gained from such studies is likely to help in developing effective breast cancer therapies with broad coverage including HERCEPTIN®-resistant metastatic HER2 overexpressing breast carcinomas. The present HER2 transgenic model is particularly suited for preclinical research as well as drug development, and is a better alternative to in vitro studies carried out using breast carcinoma cell lines. It is an in vivo system with normal stroma and microenvironment of breast epithelium with cell-cell and cell-matrix interactions that are typical of a tissue. It also takes into account local factors and cytokines produced in the normal course of mammary gland development and attendant regulatory networks. It is also suitable to carry out pharmacokinetics studies of drug candidates at a smaller scale, which can then be scaled up for studies in non-human primate models. The results provide a sound basis for actual clinical trials in human subjects. As per the strategy described herein, the development of a HER2 transgenic model does not need to involve any in vitro selection, and requires minimal in vivo selection, the latter being limited to the extent of serial passage of the mammary tissue in order to reduce the duration of time needed to develop tumors and obtaining homogenous overexpression of

HER2 in mammary cells. Moreover, breeding of these mice provides a continuous source of tissues for various follow-up or supplemental studies. This is particularly significant since the availability of clinical samples of tissues from breast cancer patients is highly limited.

The HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate as described herein was found to have superior activity over HERCEPTIN® in this HER2 transgenic model that mimics HERCEPTIN®-resistant metastatic HER2 overexpressing breast carcinomas. Approximately, 85% of breast cancer patients either do not respond to HERCEPTIN® therapy or repond poorly. The molecular basis of the resistance is not clearly understood. However, it is not due to a lower level of HER2 expression since these tumors also overexpress HER2 at 2+ or 3+ levels. Nevertheless, this significant proportion of breast cancer patients is not able to avail themselves of the powerful potential of HERCEPTIN® therapy. Preclinical studies carried out using the HERCEPTIN®-insensitive HER2 transgenic mouse model as outlined in this application shows a dramatic response of these tumors to HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate as compared to HERCEPTIN®.

The HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate was found to effectively control the growth of HERCEPTIN®-resistant tumors in a dose-dependent manner at a dosage of 100 µg DM1/kg and above. Administration of the tested conjugate at 300 µg DM1/kg once a week brought about a very impressive inhibition of tumor growth. Five such doses completely prevented the emergence of tumor for more than 60 days, and when the tumor did begin to reemerge, a second round of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 was able to control the growth. This is in contrast with a rapid growth of tumors in animals treated with control monoclonal antibody (RITUXAN®), maytansinoid conjugated control monoclonal antibody (RITUXAN®-DM1) or unconjugated HERCEPTIN®. Thus, the preclinical studies presented herein clearly show that the HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate is able to elicit a dramatic anti-tumor response even in HERCEPTIN®-resistant breast tumors. The better objective response rate obtained with the HERCEPTIN®-DM1 conjugate will allow a higher fraction of breast cancer patients to benefit from this powerful therapy. The fact that the effect of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 is dose-dependent suggests that in an actual clinical setting, the strategy is likely to provide a considerable maneuver of doses to achieve the best anti-tumor activity. Moreover, the duration of anti-tumor response is significantly longer, permitting less frequent administration of the conjugate without compromising the therapeutic efficacy. The resultant cost-effectiveness and convenience is quite significant. Furthermore, the conjugate is likely to improve survival rate among the responders. For example, the median time to disease progression in HERCEPTIN® treated patients was only 3.1 months. With the superior therapeutic efficacy of HERCEPTIN®-DM1 as compared to HERCEPTIN®, survival rate is likely to be increased.

All references cited through the specification, and the references cited therein, are hereby expressly incorporated by reference.

Deposit of Biological Material

The following hybridoma cell lines have been deposited with the American Type Culture Collection, 10801 University Boulevard, Manassas, Va. 20110-2209, USA (ATCC):

Antibody Designation	ATCC No.	Deposit Date
7C2	ATCC HB-12215	Oct. 17, 1996
7F3	ATCC HB-12216	Oct. 17, 1996
4D5	ATCC CRL 10463	May 24, 1990
2C4	ATCC HB-12697	Apr. 8, 1999

This deposit was made under the provisions of the Budapest Treaty on the International Recognition of the Deposit of Microorganisms for the Purpose of Patent Procedure and the Regulations thereunder (Budapest Treaty). This assures maintenance of viable cultures for 30 years from the date of the deposit. The organisms will be made available by ATCC under the terms of the Budapest Treaty, and subject to an agreement between Genentech, Inc. and ATCC, which assures permanent and unrestricted availability of the progeny of the cultures to the public upon issuance of the pertinent U.S. patent or upon laying open to the public of any U.S. or foreign patent application, whichever comes first, and assures availability of the progeny to one determined by the U.S. Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to be entitled thereto according to 35 USC §122 and the Commissioner's rules pursuant thereto (including 37 CFR §1.12 with particular reference to 886 OG 638).

In respect of those designations in which a European patent is sought, a sample of the deposited microorganism will be made available until the publication of the mention of the grant of the European patent or until the date on which the application has been refused or withdrawn or is deemed to be withdrawn, only by the issue of such a sample to an expert nominated by the person requesting the sample. (Rule 28(4) EPC)

The assignee of the present application has agreed that if the cultures on deposit should die or be lost or destroyed when cultivated under suitable conditions, they will be promptly replaced on notification with a viable specimen of the same culture. Availability of the deposited strain is not to be construed as a license to practice the invention in contravention of the rights granted under the authority of any government in accordance with its patent laws.

The foregoing written specification is considered to be sufficient to enable one skilled in the art to practice the invention. The present invention is not to be limited in scope by the constructs deposited, since the deposited embodiments are intended to illustrate only certain aspects of the invention and any constructs that are functionally equivalent are within the scope of this invention. The deposit of material herein does not constitute an admission that the written description herein contained is inadequate to enable the practice of any aspect of the invention, including the best mode thereof, nor is it to be construed as limiting the scope of the claims to the specific illustrations that they represent. Indeed, various modifications of the invention in addition to those shown and described herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art from the foregoing description and fall within the scope of the appended claims.

It is understood that the application of the teachings of the present invention to a specific problem or situation will be within the capabilities of one having ordinary skill in the art in light of the teachings contained herein. Examples of the products of the present invention and representative processes for their isolation, use, and manufacture appear below, but should not be construed to limit the invention.

SEQUENCE LISTING

<160> NUMBER OF SEQ ID NOS: 11

<210> SEQ ID NO 1
 <211> LENGTH: 119
 <212> TYPE: PRT
 <213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence
 <220> FEATURE:
 <223> OTHER INFORMATION: Humanized Antibody Sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 1

Glu Val Gln Leu Gln Gln Ser Gly Pro Glu Leu Val Lys Pro Gly Thr
 1 5 10 15
 Ser Val Lys Ile Ser Cys Lys Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Thr Asp Tyr
 20 25 30
 Thr Met Asp Trp Val Lys Gln Ser His Gly Lys Ser Leu Glu Trp Ile
 35 40 45
 Gly Asp Val Asn Pro Asn Ser Gly Gly Ser Ile Tyr Asn Gln Arg Phe
 50 55 60
 Lys Gly Lys Ala Ser Leu Thr Val Asp Arg Ser Ser Arg Ile Val Tyr
 65 70 75 80
 Met Glu Leu Arg Ser Leu Thr Phe Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
 85 90 95
 Ala Arg Asn Leu Gly Pro Ser Phe Tyr Phe Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly
 100 105 110
 Thr Thr Leu Thr Val Ser Ser
 115

<210> SEQ ID NO 2
 <211> LENGTH: 119
 <212> TYPE: PRT
 <213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence
 <220> FEATURE:
 <223> OTHER INFORMATION: Humanized Antibody Sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 2

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
 1 5 10 15
 Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Thr Asp Tyr
 20 25 30
 Thr Met Asp Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
 35 40 45
 Ala Asp Val Asn Pro Asn Ser Gly Gly Ser Ile Tyr Asn Gln Arg Phe
 50 55 60
 Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Leu Ser Val Asp Arg Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
 65 70 75 80
 Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
 85 90 95
 Ala Arg Asn Leu Gly Pro Ser Phe Tyr Phe Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly
 100 105 110
 Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
 115

<210> SEQ ID NO 3
 <211> LENGTH: 119
 <212> TYPE: PRT
 <213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence
 <220> FEATURE:
 <223> OTHER INFORMATION: Humanized Antibody Sequence

-continued

<400> SEQUENCE: 3

Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly
 1 5 10 15
 Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Ser Ser Tyr
 20 25 30
 Ala Met Ser Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val
 35 40 45
 Ala Val Ile Ser Gly Asp Gly Gly Ser Thr Tyr Tyr Ala Asp Ser Val
 50 55 60
 Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Arg Asp Asn Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr
 65 70 75 80
 Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys
 85 90 95
 Ala Arg Gly Arg Val Gly Tyr Ser Leu Tyr Asp Tyr Trp Gly Gln Gly
 100 105 110
 Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser
 115

<210> SEQ ID NO 4

<211> LENGTH: 109

<212> TYPE: PRT

<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence

<220> FEATURE:

<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Humanized Antibody Sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 4

Asp Thr Val Met Thr Gln Ser His Lys Ile Met Ser Thr Ser Val Gly
 1 5 10 15
 Asp Arg Val Ser Ile Thr Cys Lys Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Ser Ile Gly
 20 25 30
 Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Arg Pro Gly Gln Ser Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile
 35 40 45
 Tyr Ser Ala Ser Tyr Arg Tyr Thr Gly Val Pro Asp Arg Phe Thr Gly
 50 55 60
 Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Phe Thr Ile Ser Ser Val Gln Ala
 65 70 75 80
 Glu Asp Leu Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln Tyr Tyr Ile Tyr Pro Tyr
 85 90 95
 Thr Phe Gly Gly Gly Thr Lys Leu Glu Ile Lys Arg Thr
 100 105

<210> SEQ ID NO 5

<211> LENGTH: 109

<212> TYPE: PRT

<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence

<220> FEATURE:

<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Humanized Antibody Sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 5

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val Gly
 1 5 10 15
 Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Lys Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Ser Ile Gly
 20 25 30
 Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile
 35 40 45
 Tyr Ser Ala Ser Tyr Arg Tyr Thr Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly
 50 55 60
 Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro

-continued

65	70	75	80
Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln Tyr Tyr Ile Tyr Pro Tyr	85	90	95
Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys Arg Thr	100	105	

<210> SEQ ID NO 6
 <211> LENGTH: 109
 <212> TYPE: PRT
 <213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence
 <220> FEATURE:
 <223> OTHER INFORMATION: Humanized Antibody Sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 6

Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val Gly	1	5	10	15
Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Ser Ile Ser Asn Tyr	20	25	30	
Leu Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile	35	40	45	
Tyr Ala Ala Ser Ser Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly	50	55	60	
Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro	65	70	75	80
Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln Tyr Asn Ser Leu Pro Trp	85	90	95	
Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys Arg Thr	100	105		

<210> SEQ ID NO 7
 <211> LENGTH: 9274
 <212> TYPE: DNA
 <213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence
 <220> FEATURE:
 <223> OTHER INFORMATION: Vector Sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 7

aaagctcgatc ggtgcacatt aattcatgat cgcgagctag cagcttgcat gcctgcagca	60
gaaatgggtt aactcccag agtgtcctac acctagggga gaagcagcca aggggttgtt	120
tcccaccaag gacgaccctg ctgcgcacaa acggatgagc ccatcagaca aagacatatt	180
cattctctgc tgcaaaacttg gcatagctct gctttgctgg ggcattgggg gaagttgctg	240
ttcgtgctcg cagggtctct acccttgact cttttaatag ctcttctgtg caagattaca	300
atctaaacaa ttcggagaac tcgaccttc tctcctgagg caaggaccac agccaacttc	360
ctcttacaag cgcgatcgt tttgtccttc agaaatagaa ataagaatgc ttgctaataa	420
ttatattttt accaataaga ccaatccaat aggtagatta ttagtacta tgtaagaaa	480
tgaatcatta tcttttagta ctatttttac tcaaattcag aagttagaaa tgggaataga	540
aaatagaaa agacgctcaa cctcaattga agaacaggtg caaggactat tgaccacagg	600
cctagaagta aaaaaggaa aaaagagtgt ttttgtcaa ataggagaca ggtgggtggca	660
accagggact tataggggac cttacatcta cagaccaaca gatgccccct taccatatac	720
aggaagatat gacttaaatt gggataggtg gggtacagtc aatggctata aagtgttata	780
tagatccctc cctttctgtg aaagactcgc cagagctaga cctccttggg gtatgtgtgc	840
tcaagaagaa aaagacgaca tgaaacaaca ggtacatgat tatatttata taggaacagg	900
aatgcacttt tgggaaaga ttttccatc caaggagggg acagtggctg gactaataga	960

-continued

acattattct gcaaaaactt atggcatgag ttattatgaa tagcctttat tggccaacc	1020
ttgcggttcc caaggcttaa gtaagttttt ggttacaaac tgttcttaaa acgaggatgt	1080
gagacaagtg gtttctgac ttggtttggt atcaaaggtt ctgatctgag ctctgagtg	1140
tctattttcc tatgttcttt tggaatttat ccaaatctta tgtaaagct tatgtaaac	1200
aaagataaaa agagtgctga ttttttgagt aaacttgcaa cagtcctaac attcacctct	1260
tgtgtgtttg tgtctgttcg ccatccgctc tccgctgctc acttatcctt cactttccag	1320
agggcctccc cgcagacccc ggatcgttag ctgcggaatc gataagcttg cggccgctta	1380
actgcagaag ttggtctgta ggcaactggc aggtaagtat caaggttaca agacaggttt	1440
aaggagacca atagaaactg ggcttgctga gacagagaag actcttgctt ttctgatagg	1500
cacctattgg tcttactgac atccactttg cctttctctc cacaggtgct cactcccagg	1560
ttcaattaca gctcttaagc ggccgcaagc ttgatatega attcctgcag cccgggggat	1620
ccactagtgg atccaaagaa ttcaaaaagc ttctcgaggg cgcgcccgcg gccccaccc	1680
ctcgcagcac cccgcccgcg gcgcccctcc agccgggtcc agccggagcc atggagctgg	1740
cggccttgty ccgctggggg ctccctctcg ccctcttgcc ccccgagacc gcgagcacc	1800
aaagtgtgac cggcacagac atgaaagtgc ggctccctgc cagtcccag acccacctgg	1860
acatgctccc ccacctctac cagggctgcc aggtggtgca gggaaactg gaactcacct	1920
acctgcccc caatgccagc ctgtccttcc tgcaggatat ccaggagggt cagggctacg	1980
tgtcatcgc tcacaaccaa gtgaggcagg tcccactgca gaggctgcgg attgtgcgag	2040
gcaccagct ctttgaggac aactatgccc tggccgtgct agacaatgga gaccgctga	2100
acaataccac ccctgtcaca ggggcctccc caggaggcct gcgggagctg cagcttcgaa	2160
gcctcacaga gatcttgaag ggaggggtct tgatccagcg gaacccccag ctctgtacc	2220
aggacacgat tttgtggaag gacatcttcc acaagaacaa ccagctggct ctccactga	2280
tagacaccaa ccgctctcgg gcctgccacc cctgttctcc gatgtgtaag ggtcccgt	2340
gctggggaga gatttctgag gattgtcaga gctgacgcy cactgtctgt gccggtggct	2400
gtgcccgtc caaggggcca ctgcccactg actgctgcca tgagcagtgt gctgccggct	2460
gcacgggccc caagcactct gactgcctgg cctgcctcca cttcaaccac agtggcatct	2520
gtgagctgca ctgcccagcc ctggtcacct acaacacaga cacgtttgag tccatgcca	2580
atcccaggg ccggtataca ttcggcgcca gctgtgtgac tgctgtccc tacaactacc	2640
ttctacgga cgtgggatcc tgcaccctcg tctgccccct gcacaaccaa gaggtgacag	2700
cagaggatgg aacacagcgg tgtgagaagt gcagcaagcc ctgtgcccga gtgtgctatg	2760
gtctgggcat ggagcacttg cgagaggtga gggcagttac cagtgccaat atccaggagt	2820
ttgctggcty caagaagatc tttgggagcc tggcatttct gccggagagc tttgatggg	2880
accagcctc caaactgccc ccgctccagc cagagcagct ccaagtgttt gagactctgg	2940
aaagatcac aggttaccta tacatctcag catggccgga cagcctgctt gacctcagc	3000
tcttccagaa cctgcaagta atccggggac gaattctgca caatggcgcc tactcgtga	3060
ccctgcaagg gctgggcatc agctggctgg ggctgcgctc actgagggaa ctgggcagtg	3120
gactggcctt catccaccat aacacccacc tctgcttctg gcacacggtg cctggggacc	3180
agctctttcg gaacccgac caagctctgc tccacactgc caaccggcca gaggacgagt	3240
gtgtgggca gggcctggcc tgccaccagc tgtgcccgc agggcactgc tgggtccag	3300
ggccccca gtgtgtcaac tgcagccagt tcttcgggg ccaggagtgc gtggaggaat	3360

-continued

gccgagtact	gcaggggctc	cccagggagt	atgtgaatgc	caggcactgt	ttgccgtgcc	3420
accctgagtg	tcagcccag	aatggctcag	tgacctgttt	tggaccggag	gctgaccagt	3480
gtgtggcctg	tgcccactat	aaggaccctc	ccttctgcgt	ggcccgtgc	cccagcggtg	3540
tgaaacctga	cctctcctac	atgccatct	ggaagttcc	agatgaggag	ggcgcagtcc	3600
agccttgccc	catcaactgc	accactcct	gtgtggacct	ggatgacaag	ggctgccccg	3660
ccgagcagag	agccagccct	ctgacgtcca	tcgtctctgc	ggtggttggc	attctgctgg	3720
tcgtggtctt	gggggtggtc	tttgggatcc	tcatcaagcg	acggcagcag	aagatccgga	3780
agtacacgat	gcggagactg	ctgcagga	cgagctggt	ggagccgctg	acacctagcg	3840
gagcgatgcc	caaccaggcg	cagatgcgga	tcctgaaaga	gacggagctg	aggaaggtga	3900
aggtgcttgg	atctggcctt	tttggcacag	tctacaagg	catctggatc	cctgatgggg	3960
agaatgtgaa	aattccagtg	gccatcaaag	tgttgaggga	aaacacatcc	cccaaagcca	4020
acaaagaaat	cttagacgaa	gcatacgtga	tggctggtgt	gggctcccca	tatgtctccc	4080
gccttctggg	catctgcctg	acatccaccg	tgcagctggt	gacacagctt	atgccctatg	4140
gctgcctctt	agaccatgtc	cgggaaaacc	gcggacgctc	gggctcccag	gacctgctga	4200
actggtgat	gcagattgcc	aaggggatga	gctacctgga	ggatgtgcgg	ctcgtacaca	4260
gggacttggc	cgctcggaac	gtgctggtca	agagtcccaa	ccatgtcaaa	attacagact	4320
tcgggctggc	tcggctgctg	gacattgacg	agacagagta	ccatgcagat	gggggcaagg	4380
tgcccatcaa	gtggatggcg	ctggagtcca	ttctccgccc	gcggttcacc	caccagagtg	4440
atgtgtggag	ttatggtgtg	actgtgtggg	agctgatgac	ttttggggcc	aaaccttacg	4500
atgggatccc	agcccgggag	atccctgacc	tgctggaaaa	gggggagcgg	ctgccccagc	4560
cccccatctg	caccattgat	gtctacatga	tcatgggtaa	atgttggatg	attgactctg	4620
aatgtcggcc	aagattccgg	gagttggtgt	ctgaattctc	ccgatggcc	agggaccccc	4680
agcgtttgt	ggtcaccag	aatgaggact	tgggcccagc	cagtcccttg	gacagcacct	4740
tctaccgctc	actgctggag	gacgatgaca	tgggggacct	ggtggatgct	gaggagtatc	4800
tggtagccca	gcagggcttc	ttctgtccag	accctgcccc	gggcgctggg	ggcatgggtc	4860
accacaggca	ccgcagctca	tctaccagga	gtggcgggtg	ggacctgaca	ctagggctgg	4920
agccctctga	agaggaggcc	cccaggtctc	cactggcacc	ctccgaagg	gctggctccg	4980
atgtatttga	tggtagcctg	ggaatggggg	cagccaagg	gctgcaaagc	ctccccacac	5040
atgaccccag	ccctctacag	cggtacagtg	aggaccccc	agtacccctg	ccctctgaga	5100
ctgatggcta	cgttgccccc	ctgacctgca	gccccagcc	tgaatatgtg	aaccagccag	5160
atgttcggcc	ccagccccct	tcgccccag	agggccctct	gcctgctgcc	cgacctgctg	5220
gtgccactct	ggaaagggcc	aagactctct	ccccagggaa	gaatggggtc	gtcaaagacg	5280
tttttgccct	tgggggtgcc	gtggagaacc	ccgagtactt	gacaccccag	ggaggagctg	5340
ccctcagcc	ccaccctcct	cctgccttca	gcccagcctt	cgacaacctc	tattactggg	5400
accaggaccc	accagagcgg	gggctccac	ccagcacctt	caaagggaca	cctacggcag	5460
agaaccacga	gtacctgggt	ctggacctgc	cagtgtgaac	cagaaggcca	agtccgcaga	5520
agccctgatg	tgtcctcagg	gagcagggaa	ggcggcctct	gagctattcc	agaagtagtg	5580
aggaggcttt	tttggaggcc	taggcttttg	caaaaagctt	atcgataccg	tcgactcgag	5640
agtacttcta	gagggccgcg	gggcccacg	cctctgacag	caacgtctat	gacctcctaa	5700
aggacctaga	ggaaggcatc	caaacgctga	tggggaggct	ggaagatggc	agcccccgga	5760

-continued

ctgggcagat	cttcaagcag	acctacagca	agttcgacac	aaactcacac	aacgatgacg	5820
cactactcaa	gaactacggg	ctgctctact	gcttcaggaa	ggacatggac	aaggctcgaga	5880
cattcctgcg	catcgtgcag	tgccgctctg	tggagggcag	ctgtggcttc	tagctgcccg	5940
ggtgcatcc	ctgtgacccc	tccccagtgc	ctctcctggc	cctggaagtt	gccactccag	6000
tgcccaccag	ccttgcctca	ataaaattaa	gttgcatcat	tttgtctgac	taggtgtcct	6060
tctataatat	tatgggggtg	aggggggtgg	tatggagcaa	ggggcccaag	ttgggaagac	6120
aacctgtagg	gcctgcgggg	tctattcggg	aaccaagctg	gagtgcagtg	gcacaatctt	6180
ggctcactgc	aatctccgcc	tectgggttc	aagcgattct	cctgcctcag	cctcccaggt	6240
tgttgggatt	ccaggeatgc	atgaccaggc	tcagctaatt	tttgtttttt	tggtagagac	6300
ggggtttcac	catattggcc	aggctggtct	ccaactccta	atctcaggtg	atctaccacc	6360
cttggcctcc	caaatgtctg	ggattacagg	cgtgaaccac	tgctcccttc	cctgtccttc	6420
tgattttaa	ataactatac	cagcaggagg	acgtccagac	acagcatagg	ctacctgcca	6480
tggccaacc	ggtgggacat	ttgagttgct	tgcttggcac	tgtcctctca	tgcgttgggt	6540
ccactcagta	gatgcctggt	gaattacgat	cggtgccacat	taattcatga	aattcgtaat	6600
catggtcata	gctgtttcct	gtgtgaaatt	gttatccgct	cacaattcca	cacaacatac	6660
gagccggaag	cataaagtgt	aaagcctggg	gtgcctaata	agtgaggtaa	ctcacattaa	6720
ttgctgtgcg	ctcactgccc	gctttccagt	cgggaaacct	gtcgtgccag	ctggattaat	6780
gaatcggcca	acgcgcgggg	agaggcgggt	tgcgtattgg	gcgctcttcc	gcttcctcgc	6840
tactgactc	gctgcgctcg	gtcgttcggc	tgcggcgagc	ggtatcagct	cactcaaagg	6900
cggtaatacy	gttatccaca	gaatcagggg	ataacgcagg	aaagaacatg	tgagcaaaag	6960
ggccagcaaaa	ggccaggaac	cgtaaaaaag	ccgcgttgct	ggcgtttttc	cataggetcc	7020
gccccctga	cgagcatcac	aaaaatcgac	gctcaagtca	gaggtggcga	aaccggacag	7080
gactataaag	ataccaggcg	tttccccctg	gaagctccct	cgtgcgctct	cctgttccga	7140
ccctgcgct	taccggatac	ctgtccgctt	ttctcccttc	gggaagcgtg	gcgctttctc	7200
aatgctcacg	ctgtagggat	ctcagttcgg	tgtaggctcg	tcgctccaag	ctgggctgtg	7260
tgcacgaacc	ccccgttcag	cccgaaccgt	gcgccttata	cggtaactat	cgtcttgagt	7320
ccaaccgggt	aagacacgac	ttatcggcac	tggcagcagc	cactggtaac	aggattagca	7380
gagcgaggta	tgtaggcggg	gctacagagt	tcttgaagtg	gtggcctaac	tacggctaca	7440
ctagaaggac	agtatttggg	atctgcgctc	tgtgaagccc	agttaccttc	ggaaaaagag	7500
ttggtagctc	ttgatccggc	aaacaaacca	ccgctggtag	cggtggtttt	tttgtttgca	7560
agcagcagat	tacgcgcaga	aaaaaaggat	ctcaagaaga	tcctttgatc	ttttctacgg	7620
ggtctgacgc	tcagtggaac	gaaaactcac	gttaagggat	tttggctatg	agattatcaa	7680
aaaggatctt	cacctagatc	cttttaaatt	aaaaatgaag	ttttaaatac	atctaaagta	7740
tatatgagta	aacttggctc	gacagttacc	aatgcttaat	cagtgaggca	cctatctcag	7800
cgatctgtct	atttctgtca	tccatagttg	cctgactccc	cgtcgtgtag	ataactacga	7860
tacgggaggg	cttaccatct	ggccccagtg	ctgcaatgat	accgcgagac	ccaagctcac	7920
cggtccaga	tttatcagca	ataaaccagc	cagccggaag	ggccgagcgc	agaagtggtc	7980
ctgcaacttt	atccgcctcc	atccagtcta	ttaattgttg	ccgggaagct	agagtaagta	8040
gttccgcagt	taatagtttg	cgcaacgttg	ttgccattgc	tgctggcctc	gtggtgtcac	8100
gctcgtcgtt	tggtatggct	tcattcagct	ccggttccca	acgatcaagg	cgagttacat	8160

-continued

```

gatccccat gttgtgcaaa aaagcgggta gtccttcggt tcctccgac gttgtcagaa 8220
gtaagtggc cgcagtgtta tcaactcatgg ttatggcagc actgcataat tctcttactg 8280
tcatgccate cgtaagatgc ttttctgtga ctgggtgagta ctcaaccaag tcattctgag 8340
aatagtgtat gggcgaccg agttgtcttt gcccgcgctc atcacgggat aataccgccc 8400
cacatagcag aactttaaaa gtgctcatca ttggaaaacg ttcttcgggg cgaaaactct 8460
caaggatcct accgctgttg agatccagtt cgatgtaacc cactcgtgca cccaactgat 8520
cttcagcacc ttttactttc accagcgttt ctgggtgagc aaaaacagga aggcaaatg 8580
ccgcaaaaaa gggaataaagg gcgacacgga aatgttgaat actcatactc ttctttttc 8640
aatattattg aagcatttat cagggttatt gtctcatgag cggatacata tttgaatgta 8700
tttagaaaaa taacaaataa ggggttccc gcacatttcc ccgaaaagtg ccaoctgacg 8760
tctaagaaac cattattatc atgacattaa cctataaaaa taggcgtatc acgaggccct 8820
ttcgtcttca agaatactgc ctgcgcggtt tcggtgatga cggtgaaaac ctctgacaca 8880
tgcagctccc ggagacggtc acagcttgtc tgtaagcggg tgcggggagc agacaagccc 8940
gtcagggcgc gtcagcgggt gttggcgggt gtcggggcgc agccatgacc cagtccagta 9000
gcgatagcgg agttggctta actatgcggc atcagagcag attgtactga gaggcacca 9060
tatgcggtgt gaataaccgc acagatgcgt aaggagaaaa taccgcatca ggcgccattc 9120
gccattcagg ctacgcaact gttgggaagg gcgatcgggt cgggcctctt cgctattacg 9180
ccagctggcg aaggggggat gtgctgcaag gcgattaagt tgggtaacgc cagggttttc 9240
ccagtcacga cgttgtaaaa cgacggccag tgcc 9274

```

```

<210> SEQ ID NO 8
<211> LENGTH: 3768
<212> TYPE: DNA
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

```

```

<400> SEQUENCE: 8

```

```

atggagctgg cggcctgtg ccgctggggg ctctctctcg ccctcttgc ccccgagcc 60
gcgagcacc aagtgtgcac cggcacagac atgaagctgc ggctccctgc cagtcccag 120
accacactgg acatgctccg ccacctctac cagggtctgc aggtggtgca gggaaaactg 180
gaactcact acctgcccac caatgccagc ctgtccttcc tgcaggatat ccaggagggtg 240
cagggtctac tgctcatcgc tcacaaccaa gtgaggcagg tcccactgca gaggctcgg 300
attgtgcgag gcacccagct ctttgaggac aactatgccc tggccgtgct agacaatgga 360
gacccgctga acaataccac cctgtcaca ggggcctccc caggaggcct gcgggagctg 420
cagcttcgaa gcctcacaga gatctgaaa ggaggggtct tgatccagcg gaacccccag 480
ctctgctacc aggacacgat tttgtggaag gacatcttcc acaagaacaa ccagctggct 540
ctcactctga tagacaccaa ccgctctcgg gcctgccacc cctgttctcc gatgtgtaag 600
ggctcccgct gctggggaga gagttctgag gattgtcaga gcctgacgcg cactgtctgt 660
gccggtggct gtgcccgctg caaggggcca ctgccactg actgctgcca tgagcagtgt 720
gctgccgct gcacgggccc caagcactct gactgcctgg cctgcctcca cttcaaccac 780
agtggcatct gtgagctgca ctgccagcc ctggtcacct acaacacaga cagtttgag 840
tccatgccca atcccagagg ccggtataca ttccggccca gctgtgtgac tgctgtccc 900
tacaactacc tttctacgga cgtgggatcc tgcaccctcg tctgccccct gcacaaccaa 960
gaggtgacag cagaggatgg aacacagcgg tgtgagaagt gcagcaagcc ctgtgcccga 1020

```

-continued

gtgtgctatg	gtctgggcat	ggagcacttg	cgagaggtga	gggcagttac	cagtgccaat	1080
atccaggagt	ttgctggctg	caagaagatc	tttgggagcc	tggcatttct	gccggagagc	1140
tttgatgggg	acccagcctc	caacactgcc	ccgctccagc	cagagcagct	ccaagtgttt	1200
gagactctgg	aagagatcac	aggttaccta	tacatctcag	catggccgga	cagcctgcct	1260
gacctcagcg	tcttccagaa	cctgcaagta	atccggggac	gaattctgca	caatggcgcc	1320
tactcgctga	ccctgcaagg	gctgggcatc	agctggctgg	ggctgcgctc	actgagggaa	1380
ctgggcagtg	gactggccct	catccaccat	aacacccacc	tctgcttctg	gcacacggtg	1440
ccctgggacc	agctctttcg	gaaccgcac	caagctctgc	tccacactgc	caaccggcca	1500
gaggacgagt	gtgtgggca	gggctggcc	tgccaccagc	tgtgcgcccg	agggcactgc	1560
tggggtccag	ggcccacca	gtgtgtcaac	tgcagccagt	tccttcgggg	ccaggagtgc	1620
gtggaggaat	gccgagtact	gcaggggctc	cccagggagt	atgtgaatgc	caggcactgt	1680
ttgccgtgcc	accctgagtg	tcagccccag	aatggctcag	tgacctgttt	tggaccggag	1740
gctgaccagt	gtgtggcctg	tgcccactat	aaggaccctc	ccttctcgct	ggcccgcctg	1800
cccagcggtg	tgaacctga	cctctcctac	atgcccatct	ggaagtctcc	agatgaggag	1860
ggcgcatgcc	agccttgccc	catcaactgc	accactcct	gtgtggacct	ggatgacaag	1920
ggctgcccc	ccgagcagag	agccagcct	ctgacgtcca	tcgtctctgc	ggtggtggc	1980
attctgctgg	tcgtggtctt	gggggtgctc	tttgggatcc	tcacaaagcg	acggcagcag	2040
aagatccgga	agtacacgat	gccggagactg	ctgcaggaaa	cggagctggg	ggagccgctg	2100
acacctagcg	gagcgatgcc	caaccaggcg	cagatgcgga	tcctgaaaga	gacggagctg	2160
aggaaggtga	aggtgcttgg	atctggcgct	tttggcacag	tctacaaggg	catctggatc	2220
cctgatgggg	agaatgtgaa	aattccagtg	gccatcaaag	tgttgaggga	aaacacatcc	2280
cccaaagcca	acaaagaat	cttagacgaa	gcatacgtga	tggctggtgt	gggctcccca	2340
tatgtctccc	gccttctggg	catctgcctg	acatccacgg	tgcagctggg	gacacagctt	2400
atgccctatg	gctgcctctt	agaccatgtc	cgggaaaacc	gcgagcgcct	gggctcccag	2460
gacctgctga	actggtglat	gcagattgcc	aaggggatga	gctacctgga	ggatgtgctg	2520
ctcgtacaca	gggacttgcc	cgctcggaac	gtgctggtca	agagtcccaa	ccatgtcaaa	2580
attacagact	tcgggctggc	tcggctgctg	gacattgacg	agacagagta	ccatgcagat	2640
gggggcaag	tgccatcaa	gtggatggcg	ctggagtcca	ttctccgccg	gcggttcacc	2700
caccagagtg	atgtgtggag	ttatggtgtg	actgtgtggg	agctgatgac	ttttggggcc	2760
aaaccttacg	atgggatccc	agccccggag	atccctgacc	tgctggaaaa	gggggagcgg	2820
ctgccccagc	cccccatctg	caccattgat	gtctacatga	tcatggtcaa	atgttgatg	2880
attgactctg	aatgtcggcc	aagattccgg	gagttggtgt	ctgaattctc	ccgcatggcc	2940
agggaccccc	agcctttgtg	ggtcatccag	aatgaggact	tgggcccagc	cagtccttg	3000
gacagcacct	tctaccgctc	actgctggag	gacgatgaca	tgggggacct	ggtggatgct	3060
gaggagtatc	tggtaaccca	gcagggcttc	ttctgtccag	acctgcccc	ggcgctggg	3120
ggcatggtcc	accacaggca	ccgcagctca	tctaccagga	gtggcgggtg	ggaacctgaca	3180
ctagggctgg	agccctctga	agaggaggcc	cccaggtctc	cactggcacc	ctccgaaggg	3240
gctggctccg	atgtatttga	tgggtgacctg	ggaatggggg	cagccaaggg	gctgcaaagc	3300
ctccccacac	atgaccccag	ccctctacag	cggtacagtg	aggacccac	agtacccctg	3360
ccctctgaga	ctgatggcta	cgttgcccc	ctgacctgca	gccccagcc	tgaatatgtg	3420

-continued

```

aaccagccag atgttcggcc ccagcccctc tcgccccgag agggccctct gctgtctgcc 3480
cgacctgctg gtgccactct ggaaagggcc aagactctct cccagggaa gaatggggtc 3540
gtcaaagacg tttttgcctt tgggggtgcc gtggagaacc ccgagtactt gacaccccag 3600
ggaggagctg ccctcagcc ccacctctc cctgcttca gccagcctt cgacaacctc 3660
tattactggg accaggaccc accagagcgg ggggtccac ccagcacctt caaagggaca 3720
cctacggcag agaaccaga gtacctgggt ctggactgac cagtgtga 3768

```

```

<210> SEQ ID NO 9
<211> LENGTH: 1255
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

```

```

<400> SEQUENCE: 9

```

```

Met Glu Leu Ala Ala Leu Cys Arg Trp Gly Leu Leu Leu Ala Leu Leu
 1          5          10          15
Pro Pro Gly Ala Ala Ser Thr Gln Val Cys Thr Gly Thr Asp Met Lys
 20          25          30
Leu Arg Leu Pro Ala Ser Pro Glu Thr His Leu Asp Met Leu Arg His
 35          40          45
Leu Tyr Gln Gly Cys Gln Val Val Gln Gly Asn Leu Glu Leu Thr Tyr
 50          55          60
Leu Pro Thr Asn Ala Ser Leu Ser Phe Leu Gln Asp Ile Gln Glu Val
 65          70          75          80
Gln Gly Tyr Val Leu Ile Ala His Asn Gln Val Arg Gln Val Pro Leu
 85          90          95
Gln Arg Leu Arg Ile Val Arg Gly Thr Gln Leu Phe Glu Asp Asn Tyr
100          105          110
Ala Leu Ala Val Leu Asp Asn Gly Asp Pro Leu Asn Asn Thr Thr Pro
115          120          125
Val Thr Gly Ala Ser Pro Gly Gly Leu Arg Glu Leu Gln Leu Arg Ser
130          135          140
Leu Thr Glu Ile Leu Lys Gly Gly Val Leu Ile Gln Arg Asn Pro Gln
145          150          155          160
Leu Cys Tyr Gln Asp Thr Ile Leu Trp Lys Asp Ile Phe His Lys Asn
165          170          175
Asn Gln Leu Ala Leu Thr Leu Ile Asp Thr Asn Arg Ser Arg Ala Cys
180          185          190
His Pro Cys Ser Pro Met Cys Lys Gly Ser Arg Cys Trp Gly Glu Ser
195          200          205
Ser Glu Asp Cys Gln Ser Leu Thr Arg Thr Val Cys Ala Gly Gly Cys
210          215          220
Ala Arg Cys Lys Gly Pro Leu Pro Thr Asp Cys Cys His Glu Gln Cys
225          230          235          240
Ala Ala Gly Cys Thr Gly Pro Lys His Ser Asp Cys Leu Ala Cys Leu
245          250          255
His Phe Asn His Ser Gly Ile Cys Glu Leu His Cys Pro Ala Leu Val
260          265          270
Thr Tyr Asn Thr Asp Thr Phe Glu Ser Met Pro Asn Pro Glu Gly Arg
275          280          285
Tyr Thr Phe Gly Ala Ser Cys Val Thr Ala Cys Pro Tyr Asn Tyr Leu
290          295          300
Ser Thr Asp Val Gly Ser Cys Thr Leu Val Cys Pro Leu His Asn Gln
305          310          315          320

```


-continued

Arg Ala Lys Thr Leu Ser Pro Gly Lys Asn Gly Val Val Lys Asp Val
 1170 1175 1180

Phe Ala Phe Gly Gly Ala Val Glu Asn Pro Glu Tyr Leu Thr Pro Gln
 1185 1190 1195 1200

Gly Gly Ala Ala Pro Gln Pro His Pro Pro Pro Ala Phe Ser Pro Ala
 1205 1210 1215

Phe Asp Asn Leu Tyr Tyr Trp Asp Gln Asp Pro Pro Glu Arg Gly Ala
 1220 1225 1230

Pro Pro Ser Thr Phe Lys Gly Thr Pro Thr Ala Glu Asn Pro Glu Tyr
 1235 1240 1245

Leu Gly Leu Asp Val Pro Val
 1250 1255

<210> SEQ ID NO 10
 <211> LENGTH: 9274
 <212> TYPE: DNA
 <213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence
 <220> FEATURE:
 <223> OTHER INFORMATION: Vector Sequence

<400> SEQUENCE: 10

ttcgaagctag ccacgtgtaa ttaagtacta gcgctcgatc gtcgaacgta cggacgtcgt 60
 ctttaccaac ttgagggctc tcacaggatg tggatccctt cttcgtcggg tcccccaaca 120
 aggggtgggtc ctgctgggca gacgcgtggt tgcctactcg ggtagtctgt ttctgtataa 180
 gtaagagacg acgtttgaa cgtatcgaga cgaaacgacc ccgtaacccc cttcaacgcc 240
 aagcacgagc gtcccagag tgggaactga gaaaattatc gagaagacac gttctaattg 300
 tagatttggt aagcctcttg agctggaagg agaggactcc gttcctggg tgggttgaag 360
 gagaatgttc ggcgtagcta aacaggaag tctttatctt tattcttacg aacgattttt 420
 aatataaaaa tggttattct ggtaggta tccatctaata atcaatgat acaattcttt 480
 acttagtaat agaaaatcat gataaaaatg agttaaagtc ttcaatcttt acccttatct 540
 tttatctttc tctgcgagtt ggagttaact tcttgccac gttcctgata actgggtgcc 600
 ggatcttcat tttttccctt ttttctcaca aaaacagttt tatcctctgt ccaccaccgt 660
 tgggtccctga atatccctg gaatgtagat gtctgggtgt ctacggggga atggatatg 720
 tcctctata ctgaatttaa ccctatccac ccaatgacag ttaccgatat ttcacaatat 780
 atctagggag gaaaaagcac tttctgagcg gtctcgatct ggaggaacca catacaacag 840
 agttcttctt tttctgctgt actttgtgt ccatgtacta atataaatag atccttgctc 900
 ttacgtgaaa acccctttct aaaaggtatg gttcctcccc tgcaccgac ctgattatct 960
 tgtaataaga cgtttttgaa taccgctact aataaactt atcggaata accgggttgg 1020
 aacgccaagg gttccgaatt cattcaaaaa ccaatgttg acaagaattt tgetcctaca 1080
 ctctgttcac caaaggactg aaccaaacca tagtttcaa gactagactc gagactcaca 1140
 agataaaagg atacaagaaa acctaaata ggtttagaat acatttacga atacatttgg 1200
 ttctatattt tctcacgact aaaaaactca tttgaacgtt gtcaggattg taagtggaga 1260
 acacacaaac acagacaagc ggtagggcag aggcgagcag tgaataggaa gtgaaaggtc 1320
 tcccaggggg gcgtctgggg cctagcgatc gacgccttag ctattcgaac gccggcgaat 1380
 tgacgtcttc aaccgacact ccgtgaccg tccattcata gttccaatgt tctgtccaaa 1440
 ttctctggt tatctttgac ccgaacagct ctgtctcttc tgagaacgca aagactatcc 1500
 gtggataaac agaatgactg taggtgaaac ggaaagagag gtgtccacag gtgagggtcc 1560

-continued

aagttaatgt	cgagaattcg	ccggcggttcg	aactatagct	taaggacgtc	gggccccta	1620
ggtgatcacc	taggtttctt	aagtttttcg	aagagctccc	gcgcgcgggc	cgggggtggg	1680
gagcgtcgtg	gggcgcgggg	cgccggaggg	tcggcccagg	tcggcctcgg	tacctcgacc	1740
gccggaacac	ggcgaccccc	gaggaggagc	gggagaacgg	ggggcctcgg	cgctcgtggg	1800
ttcacacgtg	gccgtgtctg	tacttcgacg	ccgagggacg	gtcagggctc	tgggtggacc	1860
tgtacgaggc	ggtggagatg	gtcccgcagc	tccaccacgt	ccctttggac	cttgagtggg	1920
tggacgggtg	gttacggctg	gacaggaagg	acgtcctata	ggctcctcac	gtcccgatgc	1980
acgagtagcg	agtgttggtt	cactccgtcc	agggtgacgt	ctccgacgcc	taaacgcctc	2040
cgtgggtcga	gaaactcctg	ttgatccggg	accggcacga	tctgttaact	ctgggcgact	2100
tgttatgggtg	gggacagtgt	ccccggaggg	gtcctccgga	cgccctcgac	gtcgaagcct	2160
cgagtggtct	ctagaacttt	cctccccaga	actaggtcgc	cttgggggtc	gagacgatgg	2220
tctgtgcta	aaacaccttc	ctgtagaagg	tgttcttgtt	ggcgcaccga	gagtgtgact	2280
atctgtgggt	ggcgagagcc	cggacgggtg	ggacaagagg	ctacacattc	ccgagggcga	2340
cgaccctctc	ctcaagactc	ctaacagtct	cggactgcgc	gtgacagaca	cgccaccga	2400
cacgggcgac	gtccccgggt	gacgggtgac	tgacgacggt	actcgtcaca	cgacggccga	2460
cgtgcccggtg	gttcgtgaga	ctgacggacc	ggacggagggt	gaagtgggtg	tcaccgtaga	2520
cactcgacgt	gacgggtcgg	gaccagtggg	tgttgtgtct	gtgcaaacctc	aggtacgggt	2580
tagggctccc	ggccatagt	aagcccggtt	cgacacactg	acggacaggg	atgttgatgg	2640
aaagatgcct	gcaccctagg	acgtgggagc	agacggggga	cgtgttggtt	ctccactgtc	2700
gtctcctacc	ttgtgtcgcc	acactcttca	cgtcgttcgg	gacacgggct	cacacgatac	2760
cagaccctga	cctcgtgaac	gctctccact	cccgtcaatg	gtcacggtta	taggtcctca	2820
aacgaccgac	gttctcttag	aaaccctcgg	accgtaaaga	cgccctctcg	aaactacccc	2880
tgggtcggag	ggtgtgacgg	ggcgaggctg	gtctcgtcga	ggttcacaaa	ctctgagacc	2940
ttctctagt	tccaatggat	atgtagagtc	gtaccggcct	gtcggacgga	ctggagtcgc	3000
agaaggtctt	ggacgttcat	taggccccctg	cttaagacgt	gttacgcggg	atgagcgact	3060
gggacgttcc	cgacccttag	tcgaccgacc	ccgacgcgag	tgactccctt	gaccctcac	3120
ctgaccggga	gtaggtggtg	ttgtgggtgg	agacgaagca	cgtgtgccac	gggaccctgg	3180
tcgagaaagc	cttgggctgtg	gttcgagacg	aggtgtgacg	gttggccggg	ctcctgctca	3240
cacaccctct	cccggaccgg	acgggtggtc	acacgcgggc	tcccgtgacg	accccaggtc	3300
ccgggtgggt	cacacagttg	acgtcggctc	aggaagcccc	ggctctcacg	cacctcctta	3360
cggctcatga	cgcccccgag	gggtccctca	tacacttacg	gtccgtgaca	aacggcacgg	3420
tgggactcac	agtcggggct	ttaccgagtc	actggacaaa	acctggcctc	cgactggctc	3480
cacaccggac	acgggtgata	ttcctgggag	ggaagacgca	ccgggcgacg	gggtcggccac	3540
actttggact	ggagaggatg	tacgggtaga	ccttcaaagg	tctactcctc	ccgctgacgg	3600
tcggaacggg	gtagttgacg	tgggtgagga	cacacctgga	cctactgttc	ccgacggggc	3660
ggctcgtctc	tcggtcggga	gactgcaggt	agcagagacg	ccaccaaccg	taagacgacc	3720
agcaccagaa	ccccaccag	aaaccctagg	agtagttcgc	tgccgtcgtc	ttctaggcct	3780
tcatgtgcta	cgctctgac	gacgtccttt	gcctcgacca	cctcggcgac	tgtggatcgc	3840
ctcgtcaccg	gttggctccg	gtctacgcct	aggactttct	ctgcctcgac	tccttccact	3900
tccacgaacc	tagaccgcca	aaaccgtgtc	agatgttccc	gtagacctag	ggactacccc	3960

-continued

tcttacactt	ttaaggtcac	cggtagtttc	acaactccct	tttgttagg	gggtttcgg	4020
tgtttcttta	gaatctgctt	cgtagcact	accgaccaca	cccgaggggt	atacagagg	4080
cggaagacc	gtagacggac	tgtaggtgcc	acgtcgacca	ctgtgtcgaa	tacgggatac	4140
cgacggagaa	tctggtacag	gcccttttgg	cgctgcgga	cccgagggtc	ctggacgact	4200
tgaccacata	cgtctaaccg	ttcccctact	cgatggacct	cctacacgcc	gagcatgtgt	4260
ccctgaaccg	gcgagccttg	cacgaccagt	tctcaggggt	ggtacagttt	taatgtctga	4320
agcccgaccg	agccgacgac	ctgtaactgc	tctgtctcat	ggtacgtcta	cccccgttcc	4380
acgggtagtt	cacctaccgc	gacctcaggt	aagaggcggc	cgccaagtgg	gtggtctcac	4440
tacacacctc	aataccacac	tgacacaccc	togactactg	aaaaccccg	tttgaatgc	4500
taccctaggg	tggggccctc	tagggactgg	acgacctttt	ccccctcgcc	gacggggctg	4560
gggggtagac	gtggtaacta	cagatgtact	agtaccagtt	tacaacctac	taactgagac	4620
ttacagccgg	ttctaaggcc	ctcaaccaca	gacttaagag	ggcgtaccgg	tccctggggg	4680
tgcgaaaca	ccagtaggtc	ttactcctga	acccgggtcg	gtcagggaac	ctgtcgtgga	4740
agatggcgag	tgacgacctc	ctgctactgt	acccctgga	ccacctacga	ctcctcatag	4800
accatgggg	cgtcccgaag	aagacaggtc	tgggacgggg	cccgcgacc	ccgtaccagg	4860
tggtgtccgt	ggcgtcgagt	agatggctct	caccgccacc	cctggactgt	gatcccgacc	4920
tccggagact	tctcctccgg	gggtccagag	gtgacctgg	gaggcttccc	cgaccgaggc	4980
tacataaact	accactggac	ccttaacccc	gtcggttccc	cgacgtttcg	gaggggtgtg	5040
tactggggtc	gggagatgtc	gccatgtcac	tcctggggtg	tcatggggac	gggagactct	5100
gactaccgat	gcaacggggg	gactggacgt	cgggggtcgg	acttatacac	ttggtcggtc	5160
tacaagccgg	ggtcggggga	agcggggctc	tcccgggaga	cggacgacgg	gctggacgac	5220
cacggtgaga	cctttcccgg	ttctgagaga	ggggtccctt	cttaccacag	cagtttctgc	5280
aaaaacggaa	acccccacgg	cacctcttgg	ggctcatgaa	ctgtggggtc	cctcctcgac	5340
ggggagtccg	ggtgggagga	ggacggaagt	cgggtcggaa	gctgttgag	ataatgacct	5400
tggtcctggg	tggtctccgc	ccccgaggtg	ggctgtggaa	gtttccctgt	ggatgccgtc	5460
tcttgggtct	catggacca	gacctgcacg	gtcacacttg	gtcttccgg	tcaggcgtct	5520
tccggactac	acaggagtcc	ctcgtccctt	ccgcccggaga	ctcgataagg	tcttcatcac	5580
tcctccgaaa	aaacctccgg	atccgaaaa	gtttttcgaa	tagctatggc	agctgagctc	5640
tcatgaagat	ctcgcggcgg	cccgggtagc	ggagactgtc	gttgcagata	ctggaggatt	5700
tcctggatct	ccttccgtag	gtttgcgact	accctccga	ccttctaacc	tcgggggcct	5760
gaccctgcta	gaagtctgct	tggatgtcgt	tcaagctgtg	tttgagtgtg	ttgctactgc	5820
gtgatgagtt	cttgatgccc	gacgagatga	cgaagtcctt	cctgtacctg	ttccagctct	5880
gtaaggacgc	gtagcacgtc	acggcgagac	acctcccgtc	gacaccgaag	atcgacgggc	5940
ccaccgtagg	gacactgggg	aggggtcacg	gagaggaccg	ggacctcaa	cggtagggtc	6000
acgggtggtc	ggaacaggat	tattttaatt	caacgtagta	aaacagactg	atccacagga	6060
agatattata	atacccccacc	tccccccacc	atacctcgtt	ccccgggttc	aaccttctg	6120
ttggacatcc	cggacgcccc	agataagccc	ttggttcgac	ctcacgtcac	cgtgtagaa	6180
ccgagtgcg	ttagaggcgg	aggacccaag	ttcgctaaga	ggacggagtc	ggagggctca	6240
acaacctaa	ggtccgtacg	tactggctcg	agtcgattaa	aaacaaaaaa	accatctctg	6300
ccccaaagtg	gtataaccgg	tccgaccaga	ggttgaggat	tagagtcac	tagatgggtg	6360

-continued

gaaccggagg gtttaacgac cctaattgtcc gcacttgggtg acgaggggaag ggacaggaag	6420
actaaaattt tattgatatg gtcgtoctcc tgcaggtctg tgtcgtatcc gatggacggt	6480
accgggttgg ccacctgta aactcaacga acgaaccgtg acaggagagt acgcaacca	6540
ggtgagtcac ctacggacaa cttaatgcta gccacgtgta attaagtact ttaagcatta	6600
gtaccagtat cgacaaagga cacactttaa caataggcga gtgttaaggt gtgttgtatg	6660
ctcggccttc gtatttcaca tttcggacc caccgattac tcaactcatt gagtgttaatt	6720
aacgcaacgc gagtgaacgg cgaaaggta gccctttgga cagcacggtc gacctaatta	6780
cttagccggt tgcgcgcccc tctccgccaa acgcataacc cgcgagaag cgaaggagcg	6840
agtgactgag cgacgcgagc cagcaagccg acgcccctcg ccatagtcca gtgagtttcc	6900
gccattatgc caataggtgt cttagtcccc tattgcgtcc tttctgtac actcgttttc	6960
cggtcgtttt ccggtccttg gcatttttcc ggcgcaacga ccgcaaaaag gtatccgagg	7020
cggggggact gctcgtagt tttttagctg cgagttcagt ctccaccgct ttgggctgtc	7080
ctgatatttc tatggtccgc aaagggggac cttcggaggga gcacgcgaga ggacaaggct	7140
gggacggcga atggcctatg gacagggcga aagaggggaag cccttcgcac cgcgaaagag	7200
ttacagtgac gacatccata gagtcaagcc acatccagca agcgaggttc gacccgacac	7260
acgtgcttgg ggggcaagtc gggctggcga cgcggaatag gccattgata gcagaactca	7320
ggttgggcca ttctgtctg aatagcggtg accgctcctg gtgaccattg tctaatcgt	7380
ctcgtccat acatccgcc cagtgtctca agaacttcac caccgattg atgccgatgt	7440
gatcttcctg tcataaacca tagacgcgag acgacttcgg tcaatggaag cctttttctc	7500
aaaccatcgag aactagcccg tttgtttggt ggcgaccatc gccacaaaa aaacaaacgt	7560
tcgtcgtcta atgcgcgtct ttttttccca gaggttctct aggaaactag aaaagatgcc	7620
ccagactgag agtcaccttg cttttgagtg caattcccta aaaccagtac tctaagtt	7680
tttctagaa gtggatctag gaaaatttaa tttttacttc aaaatttagt tagatttcat	7740
atatactcat ttgaaccaga ctgtcaatgg ttacgaatta gtcactccgt ggatagagtc	7800
gctagacaga taaagcaagt aggtatcaac ggactgaggg gcagcacatc tattgatgct	7860
atgccctccc gaatgtaga cgggggtcac gacgttacta tggcgctctg ggtgagagtg	7920
gccgaggtct aaatagctgt tatttggctg gtcggccttc ccgctcgcg tcttaccag	7980
gacgttgaaa taggcggagg taggtcagat aattaacaac ggcccttcga tctcattcat	8040
caagcggtea attatcaaac gcggtgcaac aacggtaacg acgaccgtag caccacagtg	8100
cgagcagcaa accataccga agtaagtcca ggccaagggt tgctagtccc gctcaatgta	8160
ctaggggta caaacgctt tttcgccaat cgaggaagcc aggaggttag caacagctct	8220
cattcaaccg gcgtcacaat agtgagtacc aataccgtcg tgacgtatta agagaatgac	8280
agtacgtag gcattctacg aaaagacact gaccactcat gagggtggtc agtaagactc	8340
ttatcacata cgcgcctggc tcaacgagaa cgggcccag tagtgcccta ttatggcgcg	8400
gtgtatcgtc ttgaaatttt cacgagtagt aaccttttgc aagaagcccc gcttttgaga	8460
gttcctagaa tggcgacaac tctaggtcaa gctacattgg gtgagcacgt ggggtgacta	8520
gaagtcgtag aaaatgaaag tggtcgcaaa gaccactcgt tttttgctc tccgttttac	8580
ggcgtttttt cccttattcc cgctgtgcct ttacaactta tgagtatgag aaggaaaaag	8640
ttataataac ttcgtaata gtcccaataa cagagtactc gcctatgtat aaacttcat	8700
aaatcttttt atttgtttat ccccaaggcg cgtgtaaggg ggcttttcac ggtggactgc	8760

-continued

```

agattctttg gtaataatag tactgtaatt ggatattttt atccgcatag tgctccggga 8820
aagcagaagt tttatgacg gagcgcgcaa agccactact gccacttttg gagactgtgt 8880
acgtcgaggg cctctgccag tgtcgaaacag acattcgctt acggccctcg tctgttcggg 8940
cagtcgcccg cagtcgcccc caaccgcccc cagccccgcg tcggtaactgg gtcagtgcac 9000
cgctatcgcc tcaaccgaat tgatacgccg tagtctcgtc taacatgact ctcacgtggt 9060
atacgccaca ctttatggcg tgtctacgca ttctctttt atggcgtagt ccgcggtaaag 9120
cggtaagtcc gatgcggtga caacccttcc cgctagccac gcccgagaaa gcgataatgc 9180
ggtcgaccgc ttccccctca cagcagcttc cgctaattca acccattgcg gtcccaaaag 9240
ggtcagtget gcaacatttt gctgcgggtc acgg 9274

```

```

<210> SEQ ID NO 11
<211> LENGTH: 16
<212> TYPE: PRT
<213> ORGANISM: human
<400> SEQUENCE: 11

```

```

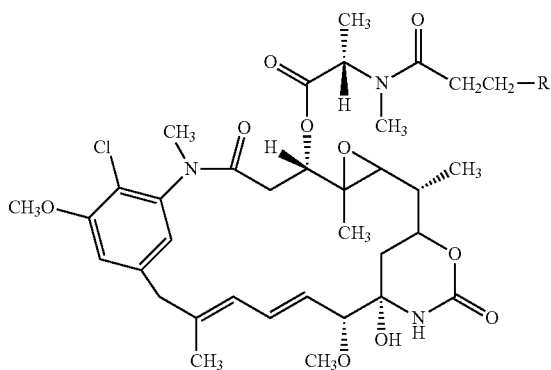
Cys Val Asp Leu Asp Asp Lys Gly Cys Pro Ala Glu Gln Arg Ala Ser
 1           5           10          15

```

What is claimed is:

1. An immunoconjugate comprising an anti-ErbB2 antibody conjugated to a maytansinoid, wherein the antibody is huMAb4D5-8.

2. The immunoconjugate of claim 1, wherein the maytansinoid is DM1 having the structure:



and wherein the antibody is chemically linked to the maytansinoid via a disulfide or thioether group at "R" shown in the structure.

3. The immunoconjugate of claim 1, wherein the immunoconjugate comprises from 3 to 5 maytansinoid molecules per antibody molecule.

4. The immunoconjugate of claim 1, wherein the antibody and the maytansinoid are conjugated by a chemical linker selected from N-succinimidyl-3-(2-pyridylthio)propionate, N-succinimidyl-4-(2-pyridylthio)pentanoate (SPP) and succinimidyl-4-(N-maleimidomethyl)cyclohexane-1-carboxylate.

5. A pharmaceutical composition comprising an immunoconjugate of any of claims 1 to 4, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

6. The immunoconjugate of claim 4, wherein the antibody and the maytansinoid are conjugated by succinimidyl-4-(N-maleimidomethyl)cyclohexane-1-carboxylate.

7. The immunoconjugate of claim 2, wherein the antibody and the maytansinoid are conjugated by a chemical linker selected from N-succinimidyl-3-(2-pyridylthio)propionate, N-succinimidyl-4-(2-pyridylthio)pentanoate (SPP) and succinimidyl-4-(N-maleimidomethyl)cyclohexane-1-carboxylate.

8. The immunoconjugate of claim 7, wherein the antibody and the maytansinoid are conjugated by succinimidyl-4-(N-maleimidomethyl)cyclohexane-1-carboxylate.

* * * * *